# Efficient Algorithms for Selected Constrained Center Location Problems 

by<br>Amirhossein Mozafari Khameneh

M.Sc., Sharif University of Technology, 2012
B.Sc., Sharif University of Technology, 2009

Thesis Submitted in Partial Fulfillment of the
Requirements for the Degree of
Doctor of Philosophy
in the
School of Computing Science
Faculty of Applied Sciences
© Amirhossein Mozafari Khameneh 2022
SIMON FRASER UNIVERSITY
Fall 2022

## Declaration of Committee

Name:<br>Degree:<br>Thesis title:<br>Committee:<br>Amirhossein Mozafari Khameneh<br>Doctor of Philosophy<br>Efficient Algorithms for Selected Constrained Center Location Problems<br>Chair: Mohammad Tayebi<br>Research Associate, Computing Science<br>Thomas C. Shermer<br>Co-supervisor<br>Professor, Computing Science<br>Binay Bhattacharya<br>Co-supervisor<br>Professor Emeritus, Computing Science<br>Pavol Hell<br>Committee Member<br>Professor Emeritus, Computing Science<br>Igor Shinkar<br>Examiner<br>Assistant Professor, Computing Science<br>Sandip Das<br>External Examiner<br>Professor<br>Advanced Computing and Microelectronic Unit<br>Indian Statistical Institute

## Abstract

Facility location problems are an essential family of problems in combinatorial optimization and computational geometry which has many applications in other fields of computer science like computer networks, robotics, etc. In this thesis, we study two classes of facility location problems. In the first part, we study the effect of a beacon/repulsor in a polygonal region and in the second part, we study the proximity connected $k$-center problem ( PCkCP ).

Beacons and repulsors are two types of actuators that appear in many applications such as sensor networks and robot motion planning. A beacon (resp. repulsor) in a polygonal region $P$ is an object that can attract (resp. repel) point particles in $P$. We say a beacon $b \in P$ attracts a point $p \in P$ if the particle initially located at $p$ finally gets to $b$ under its attraction influence. $b$ is called a beacon kernel point of $P$ if it attracts any point in $P$. Similarly, for three points $r, p, t \in P$, we say a repulsor at $r$ sends $p$ to $t$ if the particle initially located at $p$ finally gets to $t$ under the repulsion influence.

In our first result, we consider the discrete beacon kernel problem (DBKP) in simple polygons and provide a sub-quadratic time algorithm to solve it. In the DBKP, we are given a set of points $\mathcal{X} \subseteq P$ and the objective is specifying the beacon kernel points in $\mathcal{X}$. Also, we show how our method can be extended to the case where we replace $\mathcal{X}$ by a set of line segments inside $P$. In our second result, we consider the particle transmitting problem. In this problem, the objective is determining the points in the given polygonal domain that can be sent to a given target point by activating only one repulsor. We propose an efficient polynomial time algorithm for this problem.

Next, we define the proximity connectedness condition ( $P C C$ ) for a set $C$ of centers in a metric space. We say $C$ satisfies the PCC if each pair of centers can communicate with each other via the other centers assuming any two centers sufficiently close to each other can directly communicate. In the PCkCP , we are given a set of demand points in a metric space and a positive integer $k$. The objective is locating $k$ centers as close as possible to the demand points while satisfying the PCC. As our third result, we study the PCkCP when the underlying space is a path and provide a sub-quadratic time algorithm for the problem. Finally, we consider the proximity connected 2 -center problem in the plane and propose an efficient polynomial time algorithm for it.

Keywords: computational geometry; combinatorial optimization; polynomial time algorithm; beacon kernel problem; $k$-center problem

## Acknowledgements

I would like to thank Dr. Binay Bhattacharya and Dr. Thomas Shermer for supervising me to write this thesis. It was a great honour for me to have a chance to work with such knowledgeable professors. I am grateful for their time and efforts during the last several years to help me develop my ideas for solving the problems discussed in this thesis.

I would like to thank Dr. Tsunehiko Kameda for his collaboration in the fourth chapter and his constructive suggestions. I would also like to express my gratitude to Dr. Pavol Hell, Dr. Sandip Das and Dr. Igor Shinkar for their useful comments on the thesis.

## Table of Contents

Declaration of Committee ..... ii
Abstract ..... iii
Acknowledgements ..... v
Table of Contents ..... vi
List of Figures ..... viii
1 Introduction ..... 1
I Beacons and Repulsors in Polygonal Regions ..... 6
2 A Sub-quadratic Time Algorithm for the Discrete and Semi-Discrete Beacon Kernel Problem in Simple Polygons ..... 7
2.1 Background and Previous Works ..... 8
2.1.1 Previous Works ..... 11
2.2 Preliminaries ..... 12
2.3 The Discrete Beacon Kernel Problem ..... 17
2.4 The Semi-Discrete Beacon Kernel Problem ..... 21
2.4.1 The Split Decomposition Tree of $P$ ..... 21
2.4.2 The Chord Elimination Problem (CEP) ..... 24
2.4.3 Solving the Semi-Discrete Beacon Kernel Problem ..... 25
2.4.4 Computing the Beacon Kernel Points on the Segments ..... 27
3 Transmitting Particles in Polygonal Domains by Repulsion ..... 31
3.1 Background and Previous Works ..... 32
3.2 Preliminaries and Definitions ..... 33
3.3 The Algorithm ..... 33
3.3.1 Computing $\mathbf{T}^{\mathbf{0}}$ ..... 35
3.3.2 The Expand Procedure ..... 39
3.3.3 Building $\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{i}}$ ..... 42
3.4 Complexity of the Algorithm ..... 43
II The Proximity Connected $k$-center problem ..... 45
4 A Sub-quadratic Time Algorithm for the Proximity Connected k-Center Problem on Paths ..... 46
4.1 Background and Previous Works ..... 47
4.2 PCkCP for Unweighted Paths ..... 48
4.2.1 Computing an Element of $\overline{\mathbf{M}}$ ..... 53
4.3 PCkCP for Weighted Paths ..... 56
4.3.1 Matrix Search for Weighted Paths ..... 57
4.4 Computing an Element of $\bar{M}$ for Weighted Paths ..... 60
4.4.1 Proving the Sub-sequence Property ..... 64
5 An Efficient Algorithm for the Proximity Connected 2-Center Problem ..... 68
5.1 Background and Previous Works ..... 69
5.2 Preliminaries and Definitions ..... 71
5.3 A Review on Farthest-point Voronoi Diagrams and their Properties. ..... 72
5.4 Computing a BOS for a Partition ..... 73
5.5 Obtaining a BOS for the PCTCP ..... 76
5.6 Computing a BOS in the Nearby Case ..... 77
5.6.1 Computing $r^{m, l}$ ..... 80
5.6.2 Searching the Doubly-Marked Elements ..... 84
5.6.3 Obtaining $\left(D_{-}^{m, l}, D_{+}^{m, l}\right)$ having $r^{m, l}$ ..... 86
5.7 Computing a BOS in the Far Distant Case ..... 86
5.8 Computing a BOS for the Distant Case. ..... 87
5.9 Proof of Theorem 5.1 ..... 92
6 Conclusion and Future Works ..... 103
Bibliography ..... 105

## List of Figures

Figure 1.1 (a) Beacon $b$ attracts $a$ while not $c$. (b) Repulsor $r$ sends $a$ to $t$. . . 2
Figure 1.2 A set of points satisfying the PCC in the plane. . . . . . . . . . . . 4
Figure 1.3 An example of the proximity connected 3-center problem in the plane. The green dashed lines classifies the points closest to each center.

Figure 2.1 The attraction path of $p$ under the influence of $b$ is depicted by green dashed path. The green regions are the beacon kernel of $P$. As we can see, this region may not be connected. The (perpendicular) extensions of each reflex vertex is specified by blue dashed lines and finally, the chord $C$ from $v$ to $w$ is determined by gray dashed segment. The sub-polygon on the right side of it is $P_{1}(C)$ and the one on its left is $P_{2}(C)$.
Figure $2.2 \quad p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ are the two dead points of $P$ with respect to $b$. $p_{1}$ lies on the interior of an edge and $p_{2}$ is a convex vertex. Also, the dead regions of $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ with respect to $b$ are specified.14
Figure $2.3 \quad b$ is in the sub-polygon in front of $r$ and lies in $D W(r)$. ..... 16
Figure 2.4 Construction of the QPT. ..... 18
Figure 2.5 For any half-plane $H$, one of the $R_{i j}$ regions should interact with $H$. ..... 19
Figure 2.6 Marking the nodes of the QPT. ..... 20
Figure 2.7 An example of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$, a subtree of it and its corresponding region ..... 21
Figure $2.8 \quad H_{1}(r)$ is the eliminating half-plane for $P_{2}^{\text {left }}(C)$ because any beacon in this half-plane can not attract $t$. ..... 25
Figure 3.1 The behavior of two particles $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ when we activate a repulsorat $r$ in a polygonal domain $P$. In this example $p_{1}$ can get to thetarget point $t$ while $p_{2}$ resides at the vertex $v_{2}$32
Figure 3.2 Partitioning the plane by the set of cones according to $L$ ..... 34
Figure $3.3 \quad\left[v_{i}, x\right], u_{e}(y)$ and the pushing region of $y$. ..... 35
Figure 3.4 When we activate a repulsor on $J(x), x$ jumps immediately into the interior of $P$ ..... 36
Figure 3.5 Consistency of directions to $v_{i}$ in $e_{k-1}$ and $e_{k}$ according to the Propo- sition 3.3. ..... 37
Figure 3.6 Visible triangle decomposition of $P$ according to $v$ ..... 40
Figure 3.7 Obtaining $\widetilde{v a b}_{a}$ and $\widetilde{v a b}_{b}$. ..... 40
Figure 3.8 An example of Region(r). ..... 42
Figure 4.1 An example of the PCkCP on a path with 8 vertices. ..... 48
Figure 4.2 The geometric view of the candidate values generates by $\left(v_{i}, v_{j_{1}}\right)$ and the effective candidate value generated by $\left(v_{i}, v_{j_{2}}\right)$, ..... 50
Figure 4.3 Proof of Proposition 4.3. ..... 52
Figure 4.4 An example for Proposition 4.3. ..... 52
Figure 4.5 Construction of $\mathcal{T}$ on top of $P$. ..... 54
Figure 4.6 A weighted path $\left(v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}, v_{4}\right)$, the width of $\left(v_{2}, v_{4}\right)$ and three costs generated by the pair. Note that only one of them lies inside $I^{*}$. ..... 57
Figure 4.7 Proof of Proposition 4.5 ..... 59
Figure 4.8 Three points $e_{i j_{1}}, e_{i j_{2}}$ and $e_{i j_{3}}$ located at distances $E_{i j_{1}}, E_{i j_{2}}$ and $E_{i j_{3}}$ respectively and their generating points. In this example, $\left(v_{i}, v_{j_{1}}\right)$ generates the maximum of $\left\{M\left[i, j_{1}\right], M\left[i, j_{2}\right], M\left[i, j_{3}\right]\right\}$. ..... 61
Figure 4.9 Proof of case 1. ..... 66
Figure 4.10 Proof of case 2. ..... 66
Figure 5.1 The farthest-point Voronoi diagram of a set of points and its inter- section hull at some radius $r$. ..... 73
Figure 5.2 A mini-arc for two intersection hulls ..... 75
Figure 5.3 A connecting line segment of two points from two arcs that do not make a mini-arc intersects an arm. ..... 76
Figure 5.4 Enlarging the non-determining disk $D_{1}^{*}$ to cover one of the dominat- ing points of $D_{2}^{*}$ and get a better solution. ..... 78
Figure 5.5 If $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ are on a same side of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{+}^{i, j}, c_{-}^{i, j}\right),\left(D_{-}^{i, j}, D_{+}^{i, j}\right)$ can't be best optimal ..... 79
Figure 5.6 An example $(i, j)$-partition of a set of points and a BOS for the partition. ..... 81
Figure 5.7 Finding a separating line in the far distant case ..... 87
Figure 5.8 Separating $\hat{c}_{1}$ and $v_{1}$ by a vertical line ..... 88
Figure 5.9 The circles of $\mathcal{A}(r)$ and its induced partition $\pi(r)$ on $\partial H^{-}(r)$ ..... 89
Figure $5.10 \quad d_{1}, d_{2}$ and $x$ make a triangle for $c_{+}^{i, j}$ ..... 93
Figure 5.11 Proof of Sub-case 2 in Case 1. ..... 95
Figure 5.12 Proof of Proposition 5.8. ..... 96

Figure 5.13 Proof of Proposition 5.9. The positions of $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ with respect to $c_{-}^{\prime}$ (note that we relaxed the condition that $y$ should be covered by $D_{-}^{\prime}$ to make the figure clear) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 97
Figure 5.14 (a) $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the right side of line $\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$. (b) when $t$ is inside $\bar{D}_{-}$, $d\left(c_{-}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ is greater than $\delta$. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .98

Figure 5.15 An example of configuration of points for Proposition 5.10. Note that in this figure, we relaxed the condition that $x$ should be covered by $D_{+}^{\prime}$ in order to illustrate situations where $h_{1}^{\prime}$ lies inside $R\left(z_{1}\right)$ and $R\left(z_{2}\right)$. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 99

Figure 5.17 In order to add $h_{1}^{\prime}$ to the positive side, we first need to add $y$ to the positive side.
Figure $5.18 h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the right side of the $m$-line. (a) $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the right side of line $\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$. (b) $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the left side of line $\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$. . . . . . . . . 102

## Chapter 1

## Introduction

Facility location is one of the most important class of problems in combinatorial optimization that has many applications in computer science and industry. In a facility location problem (FLP), we are given a set of demand points $\mathbb{P}$ and a set $\mathbb{L}$ of possible locations for establishing facilities in an underlying space. We also have a validness condition on the subsets of $\mathbb{L}$ and any subset of $\mathbb{L}$ that passes the validness condition is called a solution for the FLP. Let us denote the set of all solutions for the FLP by $\mathbb{S}$. The objective is to find a solution that satisfies desired properties with respect to the demand points. A Center location problem (CLP) is a FLP for which each solution $S \in \mathbb{S}$ induces a cost to every demand point $p \in \mathbb{P}$. We denote the cost that a solution $S$ induces on a demand point $p$ by $\operatorname{cost}_{S}(p)$. The cost of $S$ is defined by a non-negative real function on $\left\{\operatorname{cost}_{S}(p): p \in \mathbb{P}\right\}$ and is denoted by $\operatorname{cost}(S)$. The objective is obtaining a solution $S \in \mathbb{S}$ such that $\operatorname{cost}(S)=\min \left\{\operatorname{cost}\left(S^{\prime}\right): S^{\prime} \in \mathbb{S}\right\}$. We call such a solution, an optimal solution for the CLP.

Many problems in computer science can be formulated as a CLP. For example, consider the median finding problem. In this problem, we are given a set $A$ of numbers and the objective is to find an element $m \in A$ that minimizes the difference between the number of elements greater (or equal) than $m$ and the number of elements smaller than $m$. In the CLP formulation, the underlying space, demand points $\mathbb{P}$ and locations $\mathbb{L}$ are all equal to the set $A$. The validness condition for a subset $U \subseteq A$ is $|U|=1$ and for a solution $U=\{m\}$ and a point $a \in A, \operatorname{cost}_{U}(a)$ is defined -1 if $a<m$ and +1 if $a \geq m$. Now, the cost of $U$ can be defined as $\operatorname{cost}(U)=\left|\sum_{a \in A} \operatorname{cost}_{U}(a)\right|$. A solution $m$ with minimum cost is in fact the median of $A$ that can be found in linear time [63].

Center location problems have been extensively studied within the past decades [1, $26,61]$. The $k$-center and the $k$-median problems are among the most well-known such problems. In these problems, the underlying space is either considered as $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ (where $d$ is the dimension) or a metric graph (a graph for which each edge has a length and the lengths satisfy the triangle inequality) with $\mathbb{P}$ as its vertices. $\mathbb{L}$ is defined as the entire space (continuous version) or a subset of points in the space (discrete version) and $\mathbb{S}$ is the set of all $k$-subsets (a subset of size $k$ ) of $\mathbb{L}$. For a solution $C \in \mathbb{S}$ and $p \in \mathbb{P}, \operatorname{cost}_{C}(p)$ is
defined as $d(p, C)=\min \{d(p, c): c \in C\}$ where $d(p, c)$ is the distance between the two points $c$ and $p$. The difference between these two problems is that for the $k$-center problem, $\operatorname{cost}(C)=\max \left\{\operatorname{cost}_{C}(p): p \in P\right\}$ while for the $k$-median, $\operatorname{cost}(C)=\operatorname{sum}\left\{\operatorname{cost}_{C}(p): p \in\right.$ $P\}$. In many real world applications we need to impose additional conditions on $C$ to fulfill the requirements arise from real world circumstances. The capacitated $k$-center problem can be considered as an example of such problems $[8,50]$. In this problem, each center $c$ has a capacity $\operatorname{cap}(c)$ and when we establish a center $c$, the number of demand points assigned to $c$ should not exceed $\operatorname{cap}(c)$. In the majority of these problems, the problem does not consider the structural properties of the established facilities (centers) or the underlying space. In this thesis, we study two classes of CLPs for which we need to consider the structural properties of the established facilities or the underlying space.

In Part 1, we study the behaviour of points in polygonal regions (regions that can be represented by a set of polygons) in the plane under the attraction/repulsion force of an actuator. Consider the following situation: suppose that our target area can be represented by a polygonal region and we are interested to use a speaker to invite people to hand out some flyers. Therefore, when an individual hears the invitation voice, he or she greedily moves toward the source of the sound (he/she moves in a direction that maximize the reduction of his/her distance from the source). The question here is where we should reside such that anyone in the target area can get to us. This problem is called the beacon kernel problem. Figure 1.1 (a) shows an example of such situation. If we reside at point $b$, a person at point $a$ can finally get to $b$ while a person at point $c$ will get stuck at $d$ and can never reach $b$ (because if he/she moves in any direction from $d$, his/her distance from $b$ is increased).


Figure 1.1: (a) Beacon $b$ attracts $a$ while not $c$. (b) Repulsor $r$ sends $a$ to $t$.

Such problems are modeled by beacon/particle terminology proposed by Biro [11, 12]. In this model, we assume that there is a particle at each point of the underlying polygonal region. Beacons are point objects (a beacon can reside in only one point) that can exert magnetic pull on the particles. For two points $b$ and $p$ in the region, we say $b$ attracts $p$ if the particle at $p$ finally gets to $b$ by activating a beacon at $b . b$ is called a beacon kernel point if it can attract all the points in the region (for example in Figure 1.1 (a), $b$ is not
a beacon kernel point because it can not attract $c$ ). Repulsors can be considered as the reverse of beacons. When we activate a repulsor, each particle greedily gets away from it. Figure 1.1 (b) shows the traversal path of the particle at $a$ when we activate a repulsor at $r$ (this particle finally resides at $d$ ). If $t$ is a point for which the particle at $a$ gets to $t$ by activating a repulsor at $r$, we say $r$ sends $a$ to $t$ (see Figure 1.1 (b)).

We can formulate the problem of finding a beacon kernel point as a CLP as follows: let $\mathbb{P}$ be a set of points in the given polygonal region and consider $\mathbb{L}$ as the entire region. The validness condition of a subset $U \subseteq \mathbb{L}$ can be assumed as $|U|=1$ ( $U$ contains only a single point). For a center $b \in \mathbb{L}$ and $p \in \mathbb{P}, \operatorname{cost}_{b}(p)=+1$ if $b$ can not attract $p$ and zero otherwise. By defining $\operatorname{cost}(b)=\max \left\{\operatorname{cost}_{b}(p): p \in \mathbb{P}\right\}$, the CLP turns to finding a point $b$ that attracts all the points in $\mathbb{P}$. So, if we assume that $\mathbb{P}$ has infinite size and uniformly distributed on the region, $b$ has zero cost if and only if it is a beacon kernel point.

The beacon kernel of a polygonal region is defined as the set of its beacon kernel points. In 2013, Biro proposed an $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ time algorithm to compute the beacon kernel of polygonal regions and showed that this bound is tight [11]. In Chapter 2, we study a variant of this problem called the discrete beacon kernel problem (DBKP) and provide a sub-quadratic time algorithm for the problem when the underlying polygon is simple. In this problem, we are given a simple polygon and a set of points in it. The goal is determining beacon kernel points among the given points. In addition, we extend our algorithm to solve the semi-discrete beacon kernel problem (SDBKP). In this problem, instead of points, we are given a set of line segments inside the polygon and the objective is determining the beacon kernel points on the segments. We propose sub-quadratic time algorithm for this problem and show that the SDBKP can determine the beacon kernel points on the boundary of the polygon. In Chapter 3, we consider the problem of sending a particle to a target point in polygonal regions. We call this problem the particle transmitting problem. In this problem, we are given a polygonal domain (polygonal region with polygonal holes in it) and a target point inside it. The problem is specifying the points in the domain that can be sent to the given target point by activating only one repulsor. We show that this problem can be solved in polynomial time and propose an efficient polynomial time algorithm for it.

In the second part of the thesis, we investigate the $k$-center problem when we have the proximity connectedness condition ( $P C C$ ) on the centers. Consider the following scenario: let $\mathbb{P}$ be the locations of a set of buildings in a neighborhood and we are going establish $k$ retail stores. Each store has a wireless device that enables it to communicate with any other store in the range $\delta$ of itself. We are interested to establish the stores such that:

1. If a customer asks for an item from a store that is unavailable, the store should be able to request that item from any of the other $k-1$ stores.
2. The maximum distance of a building to its closest store is minimum.

We can see that in order to have the first condition, any pair of stores should be able to communicate with each other via the other stores. We call this condition, the proximity connectedness condition (PCC) with respect to the parameter $\delta$. Generally, let $C$ be a set of points in a metric space. The $\delta$-distance graph of $C$ is defined as an undirected graph for which there is a node $\nu_{c}$ corresponding to each point $c \in C$ and for two points $c_{1}, c_{2} \in C$, there is an edge between $\nu_{c_{1}}$ and $\nu_{c_{2}}$ if $d\left(c_{1}, c_{2}\right) \leq \delta\left(d\left(c_{1}, c_{2}\right)\right.$ is the distance between $c_{1}$ and $c_{2}$ ). We say $C$ satisfies the PCC with respect to $\delta$ if its $\delta$-distance graph is connected. Figure 1.2 shows an example of a set of points satisfying PCC.


Figure 1.2: A set of points satisfying the PCC in the plane.
In the proximity connected $k$-center problem ( $P C k C P$ ), we are given a set $\mathbb{P}$ of demand points in a metric space, a positive integer $k$ and a positive number $\delta$. The objective is to find $k$ centers $C^{*}$ in the space such that the maximum distance of a demand point from its closest center is minimum and $C^{*}$ satisfies the PCC. Figure 1.3 shows an example of the proximity connected 3 -center problem and its optimal solution.


Figure 1.3: An example of the proximity connected 3 -center problem in the plane. The green dashed lines classifies the points closest to each center.

Note that when $\delta$ goes to infinity, the problem turns to the (unconstrained) $k$-center problem. Because the $k$-center problem is NP-hard in metric graphs and Euclidean space [32,

53], the PCkCP is also NP-hard in these spaces. In Part 2, we study two spacial cases for the PCkCP. In Chapter 3, we study the PCkCP when the underlying space is a path and provide a sub-quadratic time algorithm for the problem and finally, in Chapter 4, we study the proximity connected 2 -center problem in the plane and provide an efficient polynomial time algorithm for it which improves the running time of the previous algorithms for this problem.

Note: In order to simplify the notations we use in this thesis, we assume that the scope of each notation that we define is within its corresponding chapter and we may redefine and use them differently in other chapters.

## Part I

## Beacons and Repulsors in Polygonal Regions

## Chapter 2

## A Sub-quadratic Time Algorithm for the Discrete and Semi-Discrete Beacon Kernel Problem in Simple Polygons

In 2011, Biro et al. [12] initiated the concept of beacon attraction trajectory motivated by routing messages in sensor network systems. Computing the beacon kernel points of simple polygons in sub-quadratic time is a long standing open problem since it was initially proposed by Biro in 2013 [11]. In this chapter, we consider this problem by studying the discrete beacon kernel problem ( $D B K P$ ) and the semi-discrete beacon kernel problem (SDBKP) for simple polygons. In the first problem, we are given a simple polygon $P$ with $n$ vertices and a set $\mathcal{X}$ of $m$ points in it. We provide an $O\left(m \log m+n m^{\log _{4} 3}\right)$ time algorithm to determine the beacon kernel points in $\mathcal{X}$. For the second problem, instead of $\mathcal{X}$, we are given a set $\mathcal{S}$ of $m$ line segments in $P$. We propose an $O\left((n+m)^{1+\log _{4} 3} \log ^{2}(n+m)\right)$ time algorithm to determine the beacon kernel points of $P$ that lie on the segments in $\mathcal{S}$. Finally, we show that by spending $O\left(n^{1+\log _{4} 3} \log ^{2} n\right)$ time, we can determine the beacon kernel points on the boundary of $P$.

### 2.1 Background and Previous Works

Studying the behaviour of point particles in a polygonal region under the influence of an attraction actuator called beacon is an active area in computational geometry due to its application in various branches in computer science such as robot motion planning and network systems [5, 42, 46]. The problem first appeared in the context of sensor network systems in the early 2000s [42]. Consider a network of sensors in a polygonal region $P$ that gathers information and sends it to a destination point $b$ in the region. Each sensor has a range and only can pass a message to the sensors within its range (we call these sensors neighbor sensors). Greedy routing protocol is widely used in such circumstances as each sensor only needs to know the location of itself, the destination point and its neighbor sensors. Specifically, each sensor passes its message to the neighbor sensor that is closest to $b$ (if all the neighbor sensors are farther from $b$ than itself the sensor does not pass its message). Two main problems can arise here. The first problem is determining the sensors that can successfully send their messages to the destination using the above greedy protocol. The other is determining the locations for $b$ such that all sensors can successfully send their information to the destination. If we assume that $P$ is uniformly filled with sensors and the range of each sensor is infinitely small, for each pair $(p, b)$ of points in $P$, we can assign a path inside $P$ that indicates the trajectory of a message that the sensor at $p$ tries to send to $b$. Note that, $p$ can successfully send its message to $b$ if and only if this path ends up at $b$.

In the context of robot motion planning, the polygonal region $P$ can be interpreted as the underlying area of interest. The location of a robot is represented by a point inside $P$ and a beacon in $P$ is a device that when activated at a point $b$, it guides any robot in the area toward itself by sending signals. When a robot receives the signals, it can detect the direction for which they are coming. Then, the robot continuously moves in a direction that satisfies the following conditions:

1. It remains inside the polygon.
2. It maximizes the reduction of its distance from the beacon (greedy moving).

The robot continues its movement until either it reaches $b$ or gets stuck in a point in $P$ for which moving in any direction (while remaining in $P$ ) increases it's distance from $b$. In the later case, the robot can never reach $b$. In this framework, the two main questions is as follows: first, given a beacon at $b$, determine the locations for which a robot can get to $b$ by activating the beacon and second, find a location $b$ such that by activating a beacon at $b$, any robot in $P$ can get to the beacon.

In general, we use beacon/particle terminology to model such problems. In this terminology, beacons and particles are point objects which means at each time they can reside in only one point of $P$. A beacon is an attraction actuator that exerts magnetic pull on the particles. We assume that initially there is a particle at each point in $P$. Without any
confusion, when we say $a$ point $p$ in $P$, based on the context, we either refer to the location $p$ in the polygon or the particle initially lies on $p$. When we activate a beacon at a point $b \in P$, the particles inside $P$ greedily move toward $b$ with unit speed. In this model, we assume that the particles do not interact with each other. Specifically, consider the particle that initially resides at a point $p \in P$. Let $p_{t}$ be the location of the particle at time $t$ and $\vec{x}_{t}$ be the unit vector from $p_{t}$ toward the beacon. At each time $t$, the particle moves along a unit vector $\overrightarrow{z_{t}}$ such that:

1. $\vec{z}_{t}$ (located at $p_{t}$ ) points to the inside of $P$ (including its boundary).
2. $\vec{z}_{t} \cdot \vec{x}_{t}>0\left(\vec{z}_{t} \cdot \vec{x}_{t}\right.$ is the inner product of $\vec{z}_{t}$ and $\left.\vec{x}_{t}\right)$.
3. $\vec{z}_{t} \cdot \vec{x}_{t}$ is maximum over all unit vectors satisfying the first two conditions.

We call above conditions the greedy movement conditions with respect to $b$. If at any time $t$, there is no direction satisfying the first two conditions, the particle will be stranded and can not reach $b$. An immediate observation here is that $p$ can visit each point of $P$ at most once during its traversal. This is because based on the greedy movement conditions, the distance of $p$ from the beacon should be a decreasing function of time. For a pair $(b, p)$ of points in $P$, we say $b$ attracts $p$ if by activating a beacon at $b, p$ can finally get to $b$. Otherwise, we say $b$ does not attract $p$. A path $\pi \subseteq P$ is called an attraction path of $p$ under the influence of $b$ if:

1. $\pi$ starts at $p$.
2. At each point of $\pi$, the direction (unit vector) of the particle's movement satisfies the greedy movement conditions with respect to $b$.

Note that such an attraction path may not be unique. This situation happens when the particle at $p$ hits a reflex vertex with incident edges $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ such that $d\left(b, \sup \left(e_{1}\right)\right)=$ $d\left(b, \sup \left(e_{2}\right)\right)(\sup (e)$ is the supporting line of an edge $e)$. We denote the set of attraction paths of $p$ under the influence of $b$ by $\pi_{b}(p)$. Based on this definition, $b$ attracts $p$ if and only if there is a path in $\pi_{b}(p)$ that ends at $b$. Given a point $b$, the attraction region of $b$ denoted by $A(b)$ is defined as the set of points in $P$ that can get attracted by $b$. Conversely, the inverse attraction region of a point $p \in P$ denoted by $I A(p)$ is defined as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
I A(p)=\{b \in P: p \in A(b)\} \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can see that for any point $x \in P$, both $A(x)$ and $I A(x)$ contains the visible region of $x$ in $P$ (for two points $x, y \in P, y$ is in the visible region of $x$ if the connecting line segment between $x$ and $y$ completely lies in $P$ ). A beacon kernel point of $P$ is a point $b \in P$ such that $A(b)=P(b$ attracts any point in $P)$ and the beacon kernel of $P$ denoted by $\operatorname{Ker}(P)$ is defined as the set of all beacon kernel points in $P$. We call a point $d \in P$ a dead point with
respect to $b$ if $d \neq b$ and $\pi_{b}(d)$ only contains the single point $d$. Based on this definition, it is easy to see that for any pair $(p, b)$ of points in $P$, if a path $\pi \in \pi_{b}(p)$ does not end at $b$ then the endpoint of $\pi$ is a dead point. Another observation here is that if $d$ is a dead point of $P$ with respect to a beacon $b$, then $d \in \partial P$ (the boundary of $P$ ) otherwise, the particle at $d$ can move in the direction toward $b$. The dead region of a dead point $d \in P$ with respect to $b$ is defined as,

$$
\begin{gathered}
D R_{b}(d)=\left\{p \in P: \exists \pi \in \pi_{b}(p), d \text { is the endpoint of } \pi\right. \\
\text { and } \left.\neg \exists \pi \in \pi_{b}(p) \text { that ends at } b\right\}
\end{gathered}
$$

We can see that a point $p$ can be attracted by $b$ if and only if for any dead point $d$ with respect to $b, p \notin D R_{b}(d)$. For a pair $(p, s)$ of points in $P$, we say $p$ can be routed to $s$ by a sequence $B=\left(b_{1} \ldots, b_{m}\right)$ of beacons if $b_{1}$ attracts $p, b_{m}=s$ and for any $1 \leq i<m$, $b_{i+1}$ attracts $b_{i}$. Let us denote the line segment between two points $a$ and $b$ in the plane by $\operatorname{seg}(a b)$. If we need a direction for the segment we assume that this direction is from $a$ to $b$. A chord $C$ for a simple polygon $P$ is defined as a line segment $C=\operatorname{seg}(a b)$ such that $C \subseteq P,\{a, b\} \subseteq \partial P$ and $\operatorname{int}(C) \cap \partial P=\emptyset(\operatorname{int}(C)$ is the interior of $C)$. Note that $C$ divides $P$ into two simple polygons which we call them the sub-polygons of $P$ induced by $C$. If we consider the direction of $C$ from $a$ to $b$, we denote the sub-polygon on the right side of seg $(a b)$ by $P_{1}(C)$ and the other one by $P_{2}(C)$. We say a chord $C$ separates two points $x$ and $y$ in $P$ if $x \in P_{1}(C)$ and $y \in P_{2}(C)$ or vise versa (note that if one of the two points lies on $C$, then it will be on both sub-polygons and based on our definition, $C$ still separates them). Figure 2.1 shows an example of an attraction path, beacon kernel, a chord and its sub-polygons in a simple polygon.


Figure 2.1: The attraction path of $p$ under the influence of $b$ is depicted by green dashed path. The green regions are the beacon kernel of $P$. As we can see, this region may not be connected. The (perpendicular) extensions of each reflex vertex is specified by blue dashed lines and finally, the chord $C$ from $v$ to $w$ is determined by gray dashed segment. The sub-polygon on the right side of it is $P_{1}(C)$ and the one on its left is $P_{2}(C)$.

### 2.1.1 Previous Works

The concept of beacon attraction trajectory was first introduced by Biro et al. in 2011 [11, $12,13]$ as a framework to address problems involving greedy routing toward a destination point. They showed that the attraction region of a point $b \in P$ can be computed in $O(n)$ (resp. $O(n h)$ ) time when $P$ is a simple polygon (resp. polygonal domain) with $n$ vertices (resp. $n$ vertices and $h$ holes). They also proposed an $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ time algorithm for computing the inverse attraction region of a given point $p$ in polygonal domains. In addition, they proposed a naive $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ time algorithm for computing the beacon kernel of polygonal domains and showed that this bound is tight [11]. But, obtaining a sub-quadratic time algorithm for computing the bacon kernel of simple polygons remained open. As another study, in 2014 Biro et al. [14] showed that if $P$ is a simple polygon (resp. polygonal domain) with $n$ vertices (resp. $n$ vertices and $h$ holes) and $(p, s)$ is a given pair of points in $P$, a sequence of $\left\lfloor\frac{n}{2}\right\rfloor-1$ (resp. $\left\lfloor\frac{n}{2}\right\rfloor+h-1$ ) beacons are always sufficient and sometimes necessary for routing $p$ to $s$. Later, Shermer [60] improved this bound to $\left\lfloor\frac{n-4}{3}\right\rfloor$ for rectilinear simple polygons. In [47] Kouhestani et al. studied a related problem called shortest beacon watchtower problem. In this problem, a polygonal terrain $T$ with respect to the $x$-axis is given. A watchtower $W$ is defined as a vertical line segment with lower endpoint on $T$. We say $W$ is a beacon watchtower if by activating a beacon at the upper endpoint $b$ of $W$, any two points $x$ and $y$ in $T$ can be routed to each other via $b$. Now, the question is finding a beacon watchtower with minimum possible length. They gave an $O(n \log n)$ time algorithm for solving the shortest watchtower problem where $n$ is the number of vertices of $T$. In 2015, the authors presented an $O(n \log n)$ (resp. $O(n))$ time algorithm for computing the inverse attraction region of
a point in monotone polygons (resp. polygonal terrains) [48]. In 2018, Kostitsyna et al. obtained an $O(n \log n)$ time algorithm for computing the inverse attraction region of a point in simple polygons and showed that this bound is optimal [49]. In 2019, Bae et al. [7] studied rectilinear polygons and showed that $\left\lfloor\frac{n}{6}\right\rfloor$ (resp. $\left\lfloor\frac{n+4}{8}\right\rfloor$ ) beacons are always sufficient and sometimes necessary to attract any point in simple (resp. monotone) rectilinear polygons. They also showed that the beacon kernel of rectilinear polygons can be computed in linear time. In [15] Bose and Shermer introduced the concept of attraction-convex polygons. A polygon $P$ is called attraction-convex if any point $b \in P$ can attract any point $p \in P$ $(P=\operatorname{Ker}(P))$. They provided a linear time algorithm to detect whether a simple polygon is attractive-convex. As another question in this context, it is interesting to know which points can be attracted to the beacon if instead of one static location, we allow the beacon to be at any point in a given region $R \subseteq P$. Biro [11] addressed this problem by introducing weak attraction region of $R$ defined as,

$$
W A(R)=\cup_{b \in R} A(b)
$$

In [11], Biro gave an $O\left(n^{4}\left(m+n^{2}\right)^{4}\right)$ time algorithm to compute $W A(R)$ in $P$ where $P$ is a polygonal domain and $m$ is the number of vertices in $R$.

Despite recent studies on various problems regarding the beacon base trajectory of points in polygonal regions, providing a sub-quadratic time algorithm for computing beacon kernel points of simple polygons is still an open problem. In this chapter, we consider two variants of this problem: discrete and semi-discrete beacon kernel problem and present sub-quadratic time algorithms to solve these problems.

### 2.2 Preliminaries

In this chapter, we assume that $P$ is the given simple polygon with $n$ vertices. First, we provide a proposition that helps us to simplify the concept of an attraction path between a beacon and a point.

Proposition 2.1. For two points $b, p \in P$, if $b$ attracts $p$, the path in $\pi_{b}(p)$ that ends at $b$ is unique.

Proof. Suppose we have two paths $\pi_{1}$ and $\pi_{2}$ in $\pi_{b}(p)$ ending at $b$. Let $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$ be the first points that the paths split and intersect again respectively. Note that $t_{1}$ should be a reflex vertex such that $\pi_{1}$ and $\pi_{2}$ follow different edges at $t_{1}$. Otherwise, there is only one way to move greedily (if $t_{1} \in \operatorname{int}(P), p$ directly moves toward $b$ and if $t_{1}$ lies on $\operatorname{int}(e)$ for some $e \in \partial P, p$ moves toward the perpendicular projection of $b$ on $\sup (e)$. Also, if $t_{1}$ is a convex vertex, one of the paths should get farther from $b$ at $t_{1}$ which is not possible). Now, the portions of $\pi_{1}$ and $\pi_{2}$ between $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$ create a closed non-intersecting curve which contradicts the simplicity of $P$.

In order to simplify our terminology, if $b$ attracts $p$, we only consider the path in $\pi_{b}(p)$ that ends at $b$ as the attraction path of $p$ (with respect to $b$ ). Otherwise, we consider an arbitrary path in $\pi_{b}(p)$ as the attraction path of $p$. Based on this assumption, henceforth we use the notation $\pi_{b}(p)$ only for the unique attraction path of $p$ with respect to $b$. As another notation, for an edge $e \in \partial P$, we denote the perpendicular projection of $b$ on $\sup (e)$ by $h_{b}(e)$.

Observation 2.1. The attraction path of $p$ with respect to $b$ is a polygonal chain ( $p=$ $\left.a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right)$ and satisfies the following conditions:

1. For any $i>0, a_{i}$ lies on $\partial P$.
2. For any $1 \leq i<m$, if $a_{i}$ and $a_{i+1}$ lie on an edge $e$ (resp. different edges) of $\partial P$, $\operatorname{seg}\left(a_{i} a_{i+1}\right)$ is a sub-segment of $\operatorname{seg}\left(a_{i} h_{b}(e)\right)$ (resp. seg $\left.\left(a_{i} b\right)\right)$.
3. $a_{m}$ is either $b$ or a dead point of $P$ with respect to $b$.

This is because if $p$ lies in the interior of $P$, it's greedy movement is directly toward $b$ and if it is in the interior of an edge $e$, it reduces its distance to $b$ by moving toward $h_{b}(e)$. Note that when a particle reaches an endpoint of $e$, it either jumps off from $\partial P$ or again slides on the neighbor edge of $e$ from the endpoint. Because $\pi_{b}(p)$ is a polygonal chain and has a start point $p$, we can assign an order to its points based on their distance to $p$ along the path. So, for two points $x_{1}, x_{2} \in \pi_{b}(p)\left(x_{1} \neq x_{2}\right)$, we say $x_{1}<x_{2}$ if $x_{1}$ is closer to $p$ than $x_{2}$ along $\pi_{b}(p)$.

Observation 2.2. If $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$ are two points in $\pi_{b}(p)$ such that $x_{1}<x_{2}$ then $d\left(x_{1}, b\right)>$ $d\left(x_{2}, b\right)$.

The above observation is a direct consequence of the greedy movement conditions. We call any path from $p$ to $b$ satisfying Observation 2.2, a distance decreasing path from $p$ to $b$. Therefore, if there is no distance decreasing path from $p$ to $b$, then $b$ can not attract $p$.

Observation 2.3. A point $d \in \partial P$ is a dead point with respect to $b$ if an only if it satisfies one of the following two conditions:

1. $d=h_{b}(e) \in \operatorname{int}(e)$ for some edge $e$ in $\partial P$.
2. $d$ is a convex vertex $v$ with incident edges $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ such that $b$ lies in the cone obtained by two half-lines $l_{1}$ and $l_{2}$ perpendicular to $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ respectively where $l_{1}$ (resp. $l_{2}$ ) lies in the half-plane induced by sup $\left(e_{1}\right)$ (resp. sup $\left.\left(e_{2}\right)\right)$ not containing $e_{2}$ (resp. $e_{1}$ ) (figure 2.2 shows an example of such situation).

Note that when we have the second condition, $h_{b}\left(e_{1}\right)$ (resp. $\left.h_{b}\left(e_{2}\right)\right)$ lies on the side $v$ on $\sup \left(e_{1}\right)\left(\right.$ resp. $\left.\sup \left(e_{2}\right)\right)$ that does not contain $e_{1}$ (resp. $e_{2}$ ). So, any direction satisfying the second condition of the greedy movement, will violate its first condition (see Figure 2.2).


Figure 2.2: $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ are the two dead points of $P$ with respect to $b$. $p_{1}$ lies on the interior of an edge and $p_{2}$ is a convex vertex. Also, the dead regions of $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ with respect to $b$ are specified.

We call a subset $P^{\prime} \subseteq P$ convex with respect to $P$ if for any two points $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ in $P^{\prime}$, either $\operatorname{seg}\left(p_{1} p_{2}\right) \subseteq P^{\prime}$ or $\operatorname{seg}\left(p_{1} p_{2}\right) \nsubseteq P$. In [11], Biro proved that if $P$ is a simple polygon, for any $p \in P, I A(p)$ is convex with respect to $P$.

Corollary 2.1. If $P$ is a simple polygon, $\operatorname{Ker}(P)$ is convex with respect to $P$.
This is due to the fact that $\operatorname{Ker}(P)=\cap_{p \in P} I A(p)$. Therefore, if $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$ are two points in $\operatorname{Ker}(P)$, they should lie on $I A(p)$ for any $p \in P$. Now, if $\operatorname{seg}\left(x_{1} x_{2}\right) \subseteq P$, because $I A(p)$ is convex with respect to $P$, it should also lie in $I A(p)$ for all $p \in P$ and so $\operatorname{seg}\left(x_{1} x_{2}\right) \subseteq \operatorname{Ker}(P)$ which means the kernel is convex with respect to $P$.

Observation 2.4. $A$ point $b$ is in $\operatorname{Ker}(P)$ if it attracts all points in $\partial P$.
The reason is that if $b$ attracts all points in $\partial P$ and $p \in \operatorname{int}(P)$, then when we activate a beacon at $b, p$ will either directly gets to $b$ or it hits $\partial P$ at some point $t$. Now, because $b$ attracts $t, p$ will eventually gets to $b$.

Let us denote the set of all reflex vertices of $P$ by $\mathcal{R}$. For a reflex vertex $r \in \mathcal{R}$ and its incident edges $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$, consider the two half-planes $H_{1}(r)$ and $H_{2}(r)$ induced by the lines perpendicular to $\sup \left(e_{1}\right)$ and $\sup \left(e_{2}\right)$ containing $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ respectively. The dead wedge of $r$ is defined as the interior of the cone corresponding to $H_{1}(r) \cap H_{2}(r)$. We denote the dead wedge of $r$ by $D W(r)$. Also, we define the perpendicular extensions (for short extensions) of $r$ with respect to $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ as the two half-lines from $r$ perpendicular to $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ respectively enclosing $D W(r)$ (see Figure 2.1). Based on Observation 2.1, if a beacon lies on $D W(r)$, it can not attract the points on at least one of the edges incident to $r$.

Proposition 2.2. If $d$ is a dead point of $P$ with respect to $b$, then $\partial D R_{b}(d)$ (the boundary of $D R_{b}(d)$ ) is a polygonal region such that each of its edges is either an edge of $\partial P$ or $a$ chord from a reflex vertex.

Proof. Suppose that $x \in \partial D R_{b}(d)$ in $\operatorname{int}(P)$. Let $x_{0}$ be the point where $x$ hits $\partial P$ by the first time on its attraction path to $d$. Also, let $C$ be the chord containing $x$ along $\sup (b x)$. Because $x_{0}$ is also the first hitting point of all points in $C$, each point in $C$ is a boundary point of $D R_{b}(d)$ (because $b$ sends all the points in $C$ to $x_{0}$ and the points slightly on the left and the right sides of $C$ get to different sides of $x_{0}$ ). This implies that $D R_{b}(d)$ is a polygonal region. If $x_{0}$ is an interior point of an edge $e$, either $x_{0}=h_{b}(e)$ or $x_{0} \neq h_{b}(e)$. For the first case, $x_{0}$ is a dead point and so all points of $\operatorname{int}(e)$ in its neighborhood will get to $x_{0}$. This means that $x$ can not be a boundary point of $D R_{b}(d)$ which is a contradiction. For the second case, all the points of $\operatorname{int}(e)$ in the neighborhood of $x_{0}$ either get to $h_{b}(e)$ (if it is in $e$ ) or an endpoint of $e$ and again $x$ can not be a boundary point. Now, suppose that $x_{0}$ is a convex vertex with incident edges $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$. The case $x_{0}$ is a dead point is similar but if not, both $h_{b}\left(e_{1}\right)$ and $h_{b}\left(e_{2}\right)$ should lie on the same side of $x_{0}$ in $\sup \left(e_{1}\right)$ and $\sup \left(e_{2}\right)$ respectively. This again implies that there is a neighborhood of $x_{0}$ such that all of its points reaches the same point which is a contradiction. Therefore, $x_{0}$ should be a reflex vertex.

Proposition 2.3. [11] A point $b \in P$ is a beacon kernel point if it is not contained in the dead wedge of any reflex vertex $r \in \mathcal{R}$.

Proof. Suppose that $b \in P$ is not contained in any dead wedge of the reflex vertices $\mathcal{R}$ but it is not a beacon kernel point. So, there is a dead point $d \in P$ with respect to $b$. Based on the previous Proposition, $D R_{b}(d)$ should have a boundary on a reflex vertex $r$ (to find such an $r$, we can traverse along $\partial P$ from $d$ until we reach a point in $A(b))$ and a chord $C$ from it such that all the points on $C$ hit $r$ when we activate the beacon. Therefore, the points on one of the incident edges of $r$ can not get attracted to $b$ but this only happens when $b$ is inside the dead wedge of $r$.

If a point $b$ lies in $D W(r)$, we say $r$ eliminates $b$ otherwise, we say $b$ survives from $r$. Suppose that $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ are the incident edges of a reflex vertex $r$. Also, let $C_{e_{1}}$ and $C_{e_{2}}$ be the two chords from $r$ along $\sup \left(e_{1}\right)$ and $\operatorname{sub}\left(e_{2}\right)$. These chords divides $P$ into three subpolygons. Let us denote the sub-polygon containing $e_{1}$ (resp. $e_{2}$ ) by $P\left(e_{1}\right)$ (resp. $P\left(e_{2}\right)$ ). Also, we call the sub-polygon containing neither of $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$, the sub-polygon in front of $r$ (see Figure 2.3).


Figure 2.3: $b$ is in the sub-polygon in front of $r$ and lies in $D W(r)$.
Proposition 2.4. For any reflex vertex $r \in \mathcal{R}$ with incident edges $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$, we have:

1. No point in $H_{1}(r) \cap P\left(e_{2}\right)$ (similarly $H_{2}(r) \cap P\left(e_{1}\right)$ ), can be a beacon kernel point.
2. For a point $b$ in the sub-polygon in front of $r$, if $b \in D W(r)$, there is a reflex vertex $r^{\prime} \in \partial P$ closer to $b$ such that $b \in D W\left(r^{\prime}\right)$.

Proof. 1) If $b \in H_{1}(r) \cap P\left(e_{2}\right)$, it either lies in $D W(r)$ or $H_{1}(r) \backslash D W(r)$. In the former case, based on Proposition 2.3, $b$ can not be a beacon kernel point and in the later case, any path from a point $t \in \operatorname{int}\left(e_{1}\right)$ passing $\sup \left(e_{1}\right)$ can not be distance decreasing with respect to $b$. Thus, based on Observation 2.2, $b$ can not be a beacon kernel point. 2) suppose that $b \in D W(r)$. Here, any path from $t$ to $b$ needs to pass $\sup \left(e_{2}\right)$ (see Figure 2.3. The case $t \in e_{2}$ is similar). In this situation, no path in $P$ from $t$ to $b$ can be distance decreasing. Now, consider the portion of $\partial P$ from $r$ starting from $e_{1}$ up to the first visible point from $b$. For at least one reflex vertex $r^{\prime}$ in this portion and a chord $C^{\prime}$ emanating from $r^{\prime}$, the points on $\partial P$ around $r^{\prime}$ goes into different sub-polygons with respect to $C^{\prime}$ (otherwise, $b$ could attract $t)$. But this case happens only if $b \in D W\left(r^{\prime}\right)$.

In order to simplify our algorithm, we assume that the points are in general position by which we mean no three points are collinear and no two points have the same $x$-coordinate (these assumptions can be applied by slightly perturbing the points). First, we consider the discrete beacon kernel problem (DBKP) and introduce a data structure called quaternary partition tree $(Q P T)$. We show how we can use this data structure to get a sub-quadratic time algorithm to solve the DBKP. Next, we show how we can use our algorithm for solving the DBKP to solve the semi-discrete beacon kernel problem (SDBKP) in a sub-quadratic time.

### 2.3 The Discrete Beacon Kernel Problem

Let $P$ be the given simple polygon with $n$ vertices and $\mathcal{X}$ be the given set on $m$ points in $P$. In the DBKP, we are going to determine which points in $\mathcal{X}$ are beacon kernel points. The idea to solve the problem is applying Proposition 2.3 to the points in $\mathcal{X}$ and see which points of $\mathcal{X}$ survive from all reflex vertices in $\mathcal{R}$.

In order to solve the DBKP, we provide a data structure called quaternary partition tree (for short QPT) in the preprocessing phase. Using this data structure, given a half-plane $H$, we can determine the points of $\mathcal{X}$ that lie in $\operatorname{int}(H)$ in sub-linear time. Indeed, the QPT is a quaternary tree $\mathcal{Q}$ (each of its internal nodes has four children) in addition with useful information about the points in $\mathcal{X}$. Specifically, for each node $\nu \in \mathcal{Q}$, we assign a region $R(\nu) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{2}$ and a set of points $\mathcal{X}(\nu) \subseteq \mathcal{X}$ such that if $\mathcal{L}$ is the set of nodes in a level (we say two nodes in $\mathcal{Q}$ have the same level if they have equal distances to the root) of $\mathcal{Q}, \cup_{\nu \in \mathcal{L}} \mathcal{X}(\nu)=\mathcal{X}$ and for two nodes $\nu_{1}, \nu_{2} \in \mathcal{L}, \mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{1}\right)$ and $\mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{2}\right)$ have almost the same number of points (the difference between $\left|\mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{1}\right)\right|$ and $\left|\mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{2}\right)\right|$ is at most one). We call $\mathcal{X}(\nu)$ and $R(\nu)$ the pointset and the region of $\nu$ respectively.

In order to build $\mathcal{Q}$, we first sort the points in $\mathcal{X}$ based on their $x$-coordinates. This step takes $O(m \log m)$ time. Next, we create a root node $\nu_{r}$ and assign the entire plane and $\mathcal{X}$ as its corresponding region and pointset respectively. Because we assumed that the points of $\mathcal{X}$ are in general position and sorted based on their $x$-coordinates, we can get a vertical line $l_{1}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ that divides the points in $\mathcal{X}$ into two sets of almost equal sizes in a constant time. Let us denote these sets by $\mathcal{X}_{1}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ and $\mathcal{X}_{2}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$. Also, we denote the half-plane induced by $l_{1}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ containing $\mathcal{X}_{1}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ (resp. $\mathcal{X}_{2}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ ) by $R_{1}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ (resp. $R_{2}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ ). Let $l_{2}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ be the ham-sandwich cut line [57] of $\mathcal{X}_{1}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ and $\mathcal{X}_{2}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$. Therefore, $l_{2}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ divides $\mathcal{X}_{1}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ (resp. $\left.\mathcal{X}_{2}\left(\nu_{r}\right)\right)$ into two sets of almost equal sizes namely $\mathcal{X}_{11}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ and $\mathcal{X}_{12}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ (resp. $\mathcal{X}_{21}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ and $\mathcal{X}_{22}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ ). Similarly, we have four regions $R_{11}\left(\nu_{r}\right), R_{12}\left(\nu_{r}\right), R_{21}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ and $R_{22}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ induced by $l_{1}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ and $l_{2}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ such that $R_{i j}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ contains $\mathcal{X}_{i j}\left(\nu_{r}\right)(1 \leq i, j \leq 2)$. We create four children nodes $\nu_{i j}(1 \leq i, j \leq 2)$ for $\nu_{r}$ and assign $\mathcal{X}_{i j}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ and $R_{i j}\left(\nu_{r}\right)$ as their corresponding regions and pointsets respectively. We also store the pointset of each $\nu_{i j}$ in the sorted order based on their $x$-coordinates. We recursively continue this process until all leaf-nodes of $\mathcal{Q}$ has at most one point in their pointset. Note that for each internal node $\nu \in \mathcal{Q}, \cup_{1 \leq i, j \leq 2} R_{i j}(\nu)$ is the entire plane. See Figure 2.4.


Figure 2.4: Construction of the QPT.
Proposition 2.5. The QPT, the regions and the pointsets of its nodes can be computed in $O(m \log m)$ time.

Proof. We show that the cost of computing the regions and pointsets of the children of the nodes in each level of the tree is $O(m)$. Let $\left\{\nu_{1}, \ldots, \nu_{k}\right\}$ be the set of nodes at a level of $\mathcal{Q}$. First note that for each $1 \leq i \neq j \leq k, \mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{i}\right) \cap \mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{j}\right)=\emptyset$. The first step is computing the vertical lines $l_{1}\left(\nu_{i}\right)(1 \leq i \leq k)$. Because each vertical line can be computed in a constant time, the total time complexity of finding $l_{1}\left(\nu_{i}\right)$ lines is $O(k)$. On the other hand, the time complexity of computing the ham-sandwich cut line of $\mathcal{X}_{1}\left(\nu_{i}\right)$ and $\mathcal{X}_{2}\left(\nu_{i}\right)$ is $O\left(\left|\mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{i}\right)\right|\right)$ [54] and because $\sum_{i=1}^{k}\left|\mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{i}\right)\right|=O(m)$, the total cost of computing $\left\{l_{2}\left(\nu_{i}\right): 1 \leq i \leq k\right\}$ is $O(m)$. Next, the intersection of $l_{1}\left(\nu_{i}\right)$ and $l_{2}\left(\nu_{i}\right)$, the regions and pointsets of the children of $\nu_{i}(1 \leq i \leq k)$ can be computed in $O\left(\left|\mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{i}\right)\right|\right)$ time (by checking each point of it against $l_{1}\left(\nu_{i}\right)$ and $\left.l_{2}\left(\nu_{i}\right)\right)$. This implies that the total time complexity for obtaining the regions and pointsets of the children of all nodes $\left\{\nu_{i}: 1 \leq i \leq k\right\}$ is $O(m)$. Because we already have the pointset of each $\mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{i}\right)(1 \leq i \leq k)$ in sorted order, we can traverse the points in $\mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{i}\right)$ according to the order and store each point in its corresponding child of $\nu_{i}$ to have the pointsets of the children of $\nu_{i}$ in order. This traversal takes $O\left(\left|\mathcal{X}\left(\nu_{i}\right)\right|\right)$ time and so, storing the pointsets of all children of the nodes in $\left\{\nu_{i}: 1 \leq i \leq k\right\}$ takes $O(m)$ time. Because the height of $\mathcal{Q}$ is $O(\log m)$, the total time complexity of building $\mathcal{Q}$, the pointsets and regions of all nodes in $\mathcal{Q}$ is $O(m \log m)$.

Observation 2.5. For any internal node $\nu \in \mathcal{Q}$, and any half-plane $H$, one of the $R_{i j}(\nu)$ regions $(1 \leq i, j \leq 2)$ lies completely either inside or outside of $\operatorname{int}(H)$.

Given a half-plane $H$, we say an internal node $\nu \in \mathcal{Q}$ is survived from (resp. eliminated by) $H$ if $R(\nu)$ completely lies outside (resp. inside) $\operatorname{int}(H)$ (we assume that the degenerate case when $\partial H$ passes the intersection point of $l_{1}(\nu)$ and $l_{2}(\nu)$ or $\partial H$ is parallel to $l_{1}(\nu)$ or $l_{2}(\nu)$ is not happening). Similarly, we say a leaf-node $\nu$ is survived from (resp. eliminated
by) $H$ if $\mathcal{X}(\nu)$ completely lies outside (resp. inside) $\operatorname{int}(H)$ (if $\mathcal{X}(\nu)$ is empty, we count it as survived). If $\nu$ is survived or eliminated by $H$, we say $H$ interacts with $\nu$ otherwise, we say $H$ does not interact with $\nu$. Note that checking whether $\nu$ interacts with $H$ can be done in a constant time. Because each single point of $\mathcal{X}$ can be either inside or outside of $\operatorname{int}(H)$, for each root-leaf path in $\mathcal{T}$, one of the nodes on the path should interact with $H$. In Figure $2.5, R\left(\nu_{13}\right)$ is eliminated by $H$.


Figure 2.5: For any half-plane $H$, one of the $R_{i j}$ regions should interact with $H$.

Indeed, we are interested to find the lowest level node (the closest node to the root) in each root-leaf path of $\mathcal{Q}$ that interacts with $H$. Suppose that $x \in \mathcal{X}$ and $\nu_{x}$ be the leaf-node of $\mathcal{Q}$ containing $x$. Also, let $\pi_{x}$ is the root-leaf path from $\nu_{r}$ (the root of $\mathcal{Q}$ ) to $\nu_{x}$. If an internal node $\nu \in \pi_{x}$ is eliminated (resp. survived) by $H$ then $x$ is also eliminated (resp. survived) by $H$. So, we start from the children of $\nu_{r}$ and for each child, if it interacts with $H$, we mark it accordingly. Otherwise, we recursively look at its children and continue this process until in each root-leaf path, we find a node that interacts with $H$. Procedure $\operatorname{EXPLORE}\left(\nu_{r}, H\right)$ in Algorithm 1 demonstrates this process and computes the lowest level node on each root-leaf path in $\mathcal{Q}$ that interacts with $H$.

```
Algorithm 1 EXPLORE \((\nu, H)\)
    for \(i, j \in\{1,2\}\) do
        if \(\nu_{i j}\) is eliminated by \(H\) then
            Mark \(\nu_{i j}\) as eliminated.
        else if \(\nu_{i j}\) is survived from \(H\) then
            Do nothing.
        else
            \(\operatorname{EXPLORE}\left(\nu_{i j}, H\right)\) if \(\nu_{i j}\) is an internal node of \(\mathcal{Q}\).
        end if
    end for
```

Proposition 2.6. Given a half-plane $H$, we can identify the lowest level nodes of each root-leaf path that is eliminated by $H$ in $O\left(m^{\log _{4} 3}\right)$ time.

Proof. Because for each internal node $\nu \in \mathcal{Q}$, we need to check three children, the number of nodes for which we need to check at level $i$ is $3^{i}$ and because we have $O\left(\log _{4} m\right)$ levels, the total complexity of running $\operatorname{EXPLORE}\left(\nu_{r}, H\right)$ is $4 \times 3^{\log _{4} m}=O\left(m^{\log _{4} 3}\right)$.

Solving the DBKP: We first build the QPT in $O(m \log m)$ time. Next, we consider each reflex vertex $r \in \mathcal{R}$ and its two corresponding half-planes $H_{1}(r)$ and $H_{2}(r)$. We know a point $x \in \mathcal{X}$ is eliminated by $r$ if and only if $x \in H_{1}(r) \cap H_{2}(r)=D W(r)$. Therefore, we first consider the QPT against $H_{1}(r)$ and mark each node with pointset in $\operatorname{int}\left(H_{1}(r)\right)$, semi-eliminated by $r$ (see Figure 2.6). Next, we consider each subtree of $\mathcal{Q}$ rooted at a semi-eliminated node (with respect to $r$ ) against $H_{2}(r)$. If any node of these subtrees lies in $\operatorname{int}\left(H_{2}(r)\right.$ ), we mark it eliminated (independent of $r$ ).


Figure 2.6: Marking the nodes of the QPT.
Corollary 2.2. Given a reflex vertex $r \in \mathcal{R}$, we can identify the lowest level nodes of each root-leaf path that is eliminated by $r$ in $O\left(m^{\log _{4} 3}\right)$ time.

The reason is that at the $i^{\text {th }}$-level of $Q$, we have $3^{i-1}$ subtrees to explore each with pointset of size $m / 4^{i}$ and cost $\left(m / 4^{i}\right)^{\log _{4} 3}$ (based on Proposition 2.6). Now, summing up over the $O\left(\log _{4} m\right)$ levels of $Q$ gives us the desired $O\left(m^{\log _{4} 3}\right)$ time complexity.

Because we have $O(n)$ reflex vertices, we consider $Q$ against each reflex vertex in $\mathcal{R}$ and mark its nodes accordingly. Because of Corollary 2.2, this step takes $O\left(n m^{\log _{4} 3}\right)$ time. Finally, for each node $x \in \mathcal{X}$ with corresponding node $\nu_{x} \in Q$, we examine the root-leaf path from $\nu_{r}$ to $\nu_{x}$ in $Q$. If any node is marked eliminated, we report $x$ as an eliminated point otherwise, we report it as a beacon kernel point. We have $m$ points in $\mathcal{X}$ and for each, we need to check a path with length $O(\log m)$. Therefore, the reporting step takes $O(m \log m)$ time and we would have the following theorem:

Theorem 2.1. The discrete beacon kernel problem can be solved in $O\left(m \log m+n m^{\log _{4} 3}\right)$ time.

### 2.4 The Semi-Discrete Beacon Kernel Problem

Suppose that $\mathcal{S}$ is the given set of line segments such that each $S \in \mathcal{S}$ completely lies in $P$. In the SDBKP, the objective is determining the beacon kernel points on each segment in $\mathcal{S}$. In order to solve the SDBKP, we first introduce a data structure for $P$ called split decomposition tree (SDT) which enables us to eliminate the points in $P$ by half-planes instead of dead wedges. The reason is that when an interior point of a segment $S$ is eliminated by a dead wedge, that dead wedge might not eliminate an endpoint of $S$. We show that the SDT can be built in $O(n \log n)$ time which leads to a sub-quadratic time algorithm for the SDBKP.

### 2.4.1 The Split Decomposition Tree of $P$

We start by computing a triangulation $\Delta$ of $P$ and its dual graph $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$. The triangulation of $P$ can be done in linear time using Chazelle's polygon triangulation algorithm [18]. $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ is a graph for which there is a node corresponding to each triangle in $\Delta$ and two nodes in $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ are connected by an edge if their corresponding triangles share an edge. Note that because $P$ is simple, $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ is a tree (this is because we can always embed $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ in $P$ such that each node of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ lies in its corresponding triangle in $\Delta$ ). We can see that each subtree $T \subseteq \mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ corresponds to a connected region in $P$ which is obtained by the union of the triangles corresponding to the nodes in $T$. We denote this region by $P(T)$ (see Figure 2.7).


Figure 2.7: An example of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$, a subtree of it and its corresponding region.
The centroid of $\mathrm{T}_{\Delta}$ is defined as a node for which by removing it (and its incident edges) from $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$, the maximum size of each connected component is minimum. Therefore, the size of each connected component of the remaining graph is at most $\left|T_{\Delta}\right| / 2$. Note that because the degree of each node of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ is at most three, by removing a node, we would have at most three connected components. In order to avoid confusion in our algorithm, we always assume that the trees are rooted and if there are multiple choices for selecting a centroid, we
choose the one closest to the root. Based on this assumption, the centroid of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ (and each of its subtrees) is unique and can be computed in linear time [51]. Suppose that $\left|\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right|>2$ ( $\left|\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right|$ is the number of nodes in $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ ) and $c$ is the centroid of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$. Also, suppose that $c$ has degree three (resp. two) and $\left\{T_{1}, T_{2}, T_{3}\right\}$ (resp. $\left\{T_{1}, T_{2}\right\}$ ) are the subtrees of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ emanating from removing $c$ from $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ such that $T_{1}$ has the greatest size. We say two subtrees $\left\{S_{1}, S_{2}\right\}$ is obtained from splitting $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ over $c$ if $S_{1}=T_{1}$ and $S_{2}$ is the joint of $T_{2}$ and $T_{3}$ by $c$ (resp. $S_{2}=T_{2}$ ). Based on the definition of centroid, we have $\left|S_{1}\right| \geq\left|\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right| / 3$ and $\left|S_{2}\right| \leq 2\left|\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right| / 3$.

Next, we build a data structure called split decomposition tree for $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ denoted by $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ which is a binary tree such that each of its nodes corresponds to a subtree of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$. We build $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ recursively by splitting the subtrees of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ over their centroids starting from $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$. In order to build $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$, we first create a root node $\omega_{r}$ and assign $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ to it. We also store the centroid of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ in $\omega_{r}$. Next, we use the recursive procedure $B S D T\left(\omega_{r}\right)$ in Algorithm 2 to complete the construction of $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$.

```
Algorithm 2 BSDT( \(\omega\) ) // Building SDT
    Let \(T_{\omega}\) be the subtree of \(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\) assigned to \(\omega\).
    if \(\left|T_{\omega}\right|>2\) then
        Compute the centroid \(c\) of \(T_{\omega}\) and store it in \(\omega\).
        Let \(S_{1}\) and \(S_{2}\) be the subtrees obtained by splitting \(T_{\omega}\) over \(c\).
        Create two children \(\omega_{1}\) and \(\omega_{2}\) for \(\omega\).
        Assign \(S_{1}\) and \(S_{2}\) to \(\omega_{1}\) and \(\omega_{2}\) respectively.
        \(\operatorname{BSDT}\left(\omega_{1}\right)\)
        \(\operatorname{BSDT}\left(\omega_{2}\right)\)
    end if
```

Theorem 2.2. $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ can be constructed in $O(n \log n)$ time.
This is because the height of $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ is $O(\log n)$ and the subtrees in each level of $S D T\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\Delta}\right)$ are disjoint. Consider an internal node $\omega \in S D T\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\Delta}\right)$ and let $S$ and $c$ be the subtree and its centroid stored in $\omega$. Also, let $S_{1}$ and $S_{2}$ be the subtrees obtained by splitting $S$ over $c$ and $e$ be the connecting edge of $S_{1}$ and $S_{2}$. Note that $c$ corresponds to a triangle in $\Delta$ and $e$ corresponds to a chord $C$ separating $P\left(S_{1}\right)$ and $P\left(S_{2}\right)$. We call $C$ the chord corresponding to $\omega$. Let us define $\mathcal{C}$ as the set of all chords corresponding to the internal nodes in $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$. Because $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ has linear number of nodes, the number of chords in $\mathcal{C}$ is also linear. Let $\Gamma=\left\{\omega_{1}, \ldots, \omega_{k}\right\}$ be the set of nodes in a level of $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ (they all have the same distance from the root). If we denote the subtree of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ stored in $\omega$ by $T_{\omega}$, we would have the following observation:

Observation 2.6. For any two nodes $\omega_{i}, \omega_{j} \in \Gamma, \operatorname{int}\left(P\left(T_{\omega_{1}}\right)\right) \cap \operatorname{int}\left(P\left(T_{\omega_{2}}\right)\right)=\emptyset$. Also,

$$
\begin{equation*}
P=\cup_{\omega \in \Gamma} P\left(T_{\omega}\right) \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\omega$ is a leaf-node of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$, we call $P\left(T_{\omega}\right)$, the leaf-node region of $P$ corresponding to $\omega$. If a point $p$ lies in $P\left(T_{\omega}\right)$ for some $\omega \in S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$, we say $\omega$ contains $p$ and $p$ belongs to $\omega$. According to the above observation, if $v$ is a vertex of $\partial P$ and $L(v)$ is the set of leaf-nodes of $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ that contain $p$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{v \text { is a vertex of } \partial P} L(v)=O(n) \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is because we have $O(n)$ leaf-node regions in $P$ and each leaf-node region can contain a constant number of vertices.

Corollary 2.3. For each point $p \in P$ and any vertex $r$ (except possibly a constant number of vertices), a chord in $\mathcal{C}$ separates $p$ from $r$.

The reason is that when a point $p \in P$ belongs to a leaf-node $\omega$ of $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$, the chords induced by the nodes in the root-leaf path in $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ to $\omega$ separate (based on our definition, if $p$ lies on a chord, the chord separates it from all points in the polygon) $p$ from any vertex in $\partial P$ except possibly a constant number of vertices (the vertices lie in $P\left(T_{\omega}\right)$ ).

Let us consider $\mathcal{X}$ as the set of all endpoints of the segments in $\mathcal{S}$. Thus, $\mathcal{X}$ has $2 m$ points. Again, we assume that points are in general position which means no tree points (segment endpoints or polygon vertices) are collinear. Having $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$, for each node $\omega \in S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ with assigned subtree $T_{\omega}$, we denote the points of $\mathcal{X}$ lying in $P\left(T_{\omega}\right)$ by $\mathcal{X}(\omega)$ and store them in $\omega$. In order to identify the set of points lying in each triangle, we use Kirkpatrick's data structure [45] on $\Delta$ which by spending $O(n \log n)$ time for preprocessing, it enables us to determine the triangle(s) containing a query point in $O(\log n+q)$ time where $q$ is the number of triangles containing the point. Because $\mathcal{X}$ has $O(m)$ points, this step takes in $O(n+m \log n)$ time (the additional linear factor is because a vertex may lie on multiple triangles). Note that if $\omega$ has two children $\omega_{1}$ and $\omega_{2}$, we would have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{X}(\omega)=\mathcal{X}\left(\omega_{1}\right) \cup \mathcal{X}\left(\omega_{2}\right) \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Also, the total number of points stored in the nodes of each level of $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ is $O(n+m)$. Because the height of $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ is $O(\log n)$, in $O((n+m) \log n)$ time we can obtain and store $\mathcal{X}(\omega)$ for each node $\omega \in S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$. In order to solve the SDBKP, we need to address the following two sub-problems:

1. Given a chord $C$, provide an algorithm to determine which points on $\mathcal{X} \cap P_{2}(C)$ (resp. $\mathcal{X} \cap P_{1}(C)$ ) survive from the reflex vertices in $P_{1}(C)$ (resp. $P_{2}(C)$ ). We call this problem the chord elimination problem (for short CEP).
2. How we can apply the algorithm for solving CEP to the chords in $\mathcal{C}$ in order to solve the SDBKP in sub-quadratic time.

In the next sections, we see how we can answer to these sub-problems.

### 2.4.2 The Chord Elimination Problem (CEP)

Let $C=\operatorname{seg}\left(v_{1} v_{2}\right)$ be the given chord connecting two vertices in $P$. For the sake of simplicity, we assume that $C$ is horizontal having $P_{1}(C)$ in its below and $v_{1}$ is on the left side of $v_{2} . C$ divides $P$ into two sub-polygons $P_{1}(C)$ and $P_{2}(C)$. Also, let $\mathcal{Y}$ be the given set of $M$ points in $P_{2}(C)$ and $\mathcal{R}_{1}$ be the set of reflex vertices in $P_{1}(C)$. We first compute the intersection points of $\sup (C)$ with $P_{2}(C)$ and add all the chords induced by $\sup (C)$ on $P_{2}(C)$. Next, we update the triangulation of $P_{2}(C)$ such that these chords are edges of the triangulation. This modification can be done in $O\left(n^{\prime}\right)$ time [62] where $n^{\prime}$ is the number of vertices in $P_{2}(C)$. Let $T_{2}(C)$ be the subtree of $\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}$ covering $P_{2}(C)$ rooted at node $\tau$ corresponding to the triangle incident to $C$. Considering the embedding of $T_{2}(C)$ in $P_{2}(C)$, we divide $T_{2}(C)$ into three parts: $T_{2}^{u p}(C)$ is the nodes of $T_{2}(C)$ reachable from $\tau$ without crossing $\sup (C)$. Similarly, $T_{2}^{l e f t}(C)$ (resp. $T_{2}^{\text {right }}(C)$ ) is the set of nodes $\omega \in T_{2}(C)$ such that the path $\pi_{\omega}$ from $\tau$ to $\omega$ goes (by the first time) below $\sup (C)$ by crossing half-line ( $v_{2}, v_{1}$ ) (resp. half-line $\left(v_{1}, v_{2}\right)$ ) where half-line $\left(v_{2}, v_{1}\right)$ is the half-line from $v_{2}$ passing $v_{1}$. Let us denote the portion of $P_{2}(C)$ corresponding to $T_{2}^{u p}(C), T_{2}^{l e f t}(C)$ and $T_{2}^{\text {right }}(C)$ by $P_{2}^{u p}(C), P_{2}^{\text {left }}(C)$ and $P_{2}^{\text {right }}(C)$ respectively. So, in $O\left(n^{\prime}+M\right)$ time, we can identify the points of $\mathcal{Y}$ in each of these regions.

Next, suppose that we are given a reflex vertex $r \in P_{1}(C)$ with incident edges $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$. In the following, we define the eliminating half-plane generated by $r$ for each of $P_{2}^{u p}(C)$, $P_{2}^{\text {left }}(C)$ and $P_{2}^{\text {right }}(C)$ such that no beacon point can lie in the half-plane. Based on Proposition 2.4, if $C$ completely lies in $P\left(e_{1}\right)$ (resp. $\mathrm{P}\left(e_{2}\right)$ ), $H_{2}(r)$ (resp. $H_{1}(r)$ ) is the eliminating half-plane of $r$ on $P_{2}(C)$. Similarly, if $C$ completely lies in the sub-polygon in front of $r, r$ does not need to generate any eliminating half-plane on $P_{2}(C)$. Otherwise, at least one of $c_{e_{1}}$ or $c_{e_{2}}$ intersects $C$. If $v_{1}$ (similarly $v_{2}$ ) lies in $P\left(e_{1}\right)$ (resp. $P\left(e_{2}\right)$ ), $H_{2}(r)$ (resp. $H_{1}(r)$ ) would be the eliminating half-plane on $P_{2}^{l e f t}(C)$. Also, if the extension of $e_{2}$ (resp. $e_{1}$ ) intersects $P_{2}^{u p}(C)$, we assign its corresponding half-plane as the eliminating half-plane of $r$ on $P_{2}^{u p}(C)$. Note that if the both extensions of $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ intersect $C$, then $C$ can not intersect both $C_{e_{1}}$ and $C_{e_{2}}$. So in each situation, we assign at most one eliminating half-plane to each of $P_{2}^{u p}(C), P_{2}^{l e f t}(C)$ and $P_{2}^{r i g h t}(C)$ which can be obtained in $O\left(\log n^{\prime}\right)$ time (see Figure 2.8 as an example).


Figure 2.8: $H_{1}(r)$ is the eliminating half-plane for $P_{2}^{\text {left }}(C)$ because any beacon in this half-plane can not attract $t$.

We say a point $y \in \mathcal{Y}$ is eliminated by a reflex vertex $r \in \mathcal{R}_{1}$ if it lies in the eliminating half-plane generated by $r$ in its region. In the CEP, the objective is determining the point of $\mathcal{Y}$ survived from any reflex vertex $r$ in $\mathcal{R}_{1}$. In order to solve this problem, we first build a QPT on the points of $P_{2}^{u p}(C), P_{2}^{\text {left }}(C)$ and $P_{2}^{\text {right }}(C)$ and consider them against the eliminating half-planes generated by the reflex vertices in $\mathcal{R}_{1}$. We also create a list $L S(\nu)$ of half-planes for each node $\nu$ in the QPTs and when a half-plane eliminates $\nu$, we store it in $L S(\nu)$. Assuming $n^{\prime \prime}$ is the number of vertice in $\mathcal{R}_{1}$, we have:

Proposition 2.7. The CEP can be solved in $O\left(\left(n^{\prime}+M\right) \log \left(n^{\prime}+M\right)+n^{\prime \prime}\left(n^{\prime}+M\right)^{\log _{4} 3}\right)$ time.

The proof is similar to the proof of Theorem 2.1.

### 2.4.3 Solving the Semi-Discrete Beacon Kernel Problem

Let $\omega$ be an internal node in $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ with two children $\omega_{1}$ and $\omega_{2}$ and induced chord $c_{\omega}$. Let us denote the procedure of determining the points in $\mathcal{X}\left(\omega_{1}\right)$ (resp. $\left.\mathcal{X}\left(\omega_{2}\right)\right)$ surviving from the reflex vertices in $P\left(T_{\omega_{2}}\right)$ (resp. $\left.P\left(T_{\omega_{1}}\right)\right)$ by $\operatorname{CEP}\left(\mathcal{X}\left(\omega_{1}\right), P\left(T_{\omega_{2}}\right)\right)$ (resp. $\operatorname{CEP}\left(\mathcal{X}\left(\omega_{2}\right)\right.$, $\left.P\left(T_{\omega_{1}}\right)\right)$ ). Procedure $\operatorname{REFINE}\left(\omega_{r}\right)$ specifies the points in $\mathcal{X}$ which are eliminated by the reflex vertices in $\mathcal{R}$.

```
Algorithm 3 REFINE(\omega)
    if }\omega\mathrm{ is a leaf-node of SDT( }\mp@subsup{\mathbb{T}}{\Delta}{})\mathrm{ then
        for each point }x\in\mathcal{X}(\omega)\mathrm{ do
            for each reflex vertex v}\mathrm{ in }P(\mp@subsup{T}{\omega}{})\mathrm{ do
                    Eliminate the portion of the segment with endpoint x lying in DW(v).
            end for
        end for
    else
        Let }\mp@subsup{\omega}{1}{}\mathrm{ and }\mp@subsup{\omega}{2}{}\mathrm{ be the children of }\omega\mathrm{ .
        CEP}(\mathcal{X}(\mp@subsup{\omega}{1}{}),P(\mp@subsup{T}{\mp@subsup{\omega}{2}{}}{}))
        CEP}(\mathcal{X}(\mp@subsup{\omega}{2}{}),P(\mp@subsup{T}{\mp@subsup{\omega}{1}{}}{}))
        REFINE( }\mp@subsup{\omega}{1}{})\mathrm{ .
        REFINE( }\mp@subsup{\omega}{2}{})
    end if
```

After running REFINE $\left(\omega_{r}\right)$, the points of $\mathcal{X}$ that are not marked eliminated are the beacon kernel points in $\mathcal{X}$. This is because if $x \in \mathcal{X}$ and $v \in \mathcal{R}$, if they are in the same region corresponding to a leaf-node of $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$, we directly check whether $v$ eliminates $x$. Otherwise, consider the lowest level node $\omega \in S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ with children $\omega_{1}$ and $\omega_{2}$ for which $x \in P\left(T_{\omega_{1}}\right)$ and $v \in P\left(T_{\omega_{2}}\right)$. Now, $\operatorname{CEP}\left(\mathcal{X}\left(\omega_{1}\right), P\left(T_{\omega_{2}}\right)\right)$ eliminates $x$ if it is eliminated by $v$.

Complexity analysis: In order to analyse the time complexity of running $\operatorname{REFINE}\left(\omega_{r}\right)$, first note that because we assumed that the points are in general position, for each leaf-node $\omega \in S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right), P\left(T_{\omega}\right)$ contains only a constant number of vertices in $\partial P$ (because $P\left(T_{\omega}\right)$ is a triangle or two triangles sharing an edge). We have $O(m)$ points in $\mathcal{X}$ and the number of edges in the entire triangulation $\Delta$ is linear which implies that the first part of the algorithm (lines 2 to 8 ) takes $O(n+m)$ time.

Next, note that $S D T\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\Delta}\right)$ has $O(\log n)$ levels and for two nodes $\omega^{\prime}$ and $\omega^{\prime \prime}$ in a same level of $S D T\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\Delta}\right), P\left(T_{\omega^{\prime}}\right)$ and $P\left(T_{\omega^{\prime}}\right)$ have disjoint interiors. This implies that for each level $i$ of $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ with the set of nodes $\mathcal{L}_{i}$, we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{\nu \in \mathcal{L}_{i}}|\mathcal{X}(\nu)|=O(m+n) \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly, $\sum_{\omega \in \mathcal{L}_{i}}\left|P\left(T_{\omega}\right)\right|=O(n)$ where $\left|P\left(T_{\omega}\right)\right|$ is the number of vertices in $\partial P\left(T_{\omega}\right)$. Therefore, the time complexity of running the two CEP procedures (lines 11 and 12 of the algorithm) for all nodes $\omega \in \mathcal{L}_{i}$ is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
O\left((n+m) \log (n+m)+n(n+m)^{\log _{4} 3}\right) \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because $S D T\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\Delta}\right)$ has $O(\log n)$ levels, the total time complexity of running $\operatorname{REFINE}\left(\omega_{r}\right)$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
O\left(\left((n+m) \log (n+m)+n(n+m)^{\log _{4} 3}\right) \log n\right) \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\omega_{r}$ is the root of $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$.

### 2.4.4 Computing the Beacon Kernel Points on the Segments

First, note that because the beacon kernel of $P$ is convex with respect to $P$ [11] , for each segment $S \in \mathcal{S}, S \cap \operatorname{Ker}(P)$ is a connected region. We call this region, the kernel segment of $S$ and denote it by $K S(S)$. In the SDBKP, the objective is determining the kernel segments of the segments in $\mathcal{S}$.

Observation 2.7. If $x \in \operatorname{int}(S)$ gets eliminated by a reflex vertex $r$, then $r$ eliminates $a$ or $b$ (or both).

This is because $S \subseteq P$ and the boundary of the eliminating half-plane of $r$ on $x$ can intersect $S$ in at most one point. Suppose that $\mathcal{H}_{a}$ (resp. $\mathcal{H}_{b}$ ) is the set of eliminating half-planes of the reflex vertices in $\mathcal{R}$ on $a$ (resp. b) that eliminate $a$ (resp. b) after running $\operatorname{REFINE}\left(\omega_{r}\right)$. We denote the union of the half-planes in $\mathcal{H}_{a}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{b}$ by $\mathcal{U}_{a}$ and $\mathcal{U}_{b}$ respectively. Suppose $a^{\prime}$ (resp. $b^{\prime}$ ) is the intersection point of half-line ( $a, b$ ) (resp. half-line $(b, a)$ ) with $\partial \mathcal{U}_{a}$ (resp. $\left.\partial \mathcal{U}_{b}\right)$. If such an intersection does not exist, we consider an imaginary intersection at infinity. According to Observation 2.7 we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
K S(S)=S \backslash\left(\operatorname{seg}\left(a a^{\prime}\right) \cup \operatorname{seg}\left(b b^{\prime}\right)\right) \tag{2.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

In order to obtain $a^{\prime}$ and $b^{\prime}$, first let us denote the union of the half-planes in $L S(\nu)$ by $\mathcal{W}(\nu)$ where $\nu$ is a node of a QPT. Note that $\mathcal{W}(\nu)$ may not be convex.

Proposition 2.8. If a point $p$ lies in the intersection of the half-planes in $L S(\nu)$, then any half-line from $p$ can intersect $\mathcal{W}(\nu)$ in at most one point.

Proof: Suppose not and there is a half-line $\ell$ from $p$ that intersects $\partial \mathcal{W}(\nu)$ in at least two points. Because $\ell$ intersects the boundary of each half-plane on the union in at most one point, there is two different half-planes $H_{1}$ and $H_{2}$ such that the intersection points of $\ell$ with $\partial H_{1}$ and $\partial H_{2}$ lie on $\partial \mathcal{W}(\nu)$. Because $p \in H_{1} \cap H_{2}, \ell$ should first intersect $\partial\left(H_{1} \cap H_{2}\right)$. But then it can not intersect $\partial H_{1}$ and $\partial H_{2}$ in two different points.

Based on the above proposition, we can have an angular order (clockwise or counterclockwise) on the vertices in $\partial \mathcal{W}(\nu)$ from any point in the intersection of the half-planes in $L S(\nu)$. Our next step is computing $\mathcal{W}(\nu)$ for all nodes $\nu$ in the QPTs. Let $\mathcal{Q}$ be a QPT covering a subset of points of size $n_{1}$ for which we are going to consider it against a set of $n_{2}$ half-planes $\mathcal{H}$. For a node $\nu \in \mathcal{Q}$, the half-lines in $L S(\nu)$ should have non-empty intersection
because they all covers the pointset of $\nu$. Also, at the $i^{\text {th }}$-level of $Q$, each half-plane $H \in \mathcal{H}$ can appear at most $3^{i}$ times in the lists. For each node $\nu$, we use the divide-and-conquer approach (we can use this approach because of Proposition 2.8) to compute $\mathcal{W}(\nu)$ and an angular order on its vertices (from a points in the intersection of the half-planes in $L S(\nu)$ ). Now, the total time complexity of computing $\mathcal{W}(\nu)$ for all nodes $\nu$ in the $i^{\text {th }}$-level of $\mathcal{Q}$ is $O\left(n_{2} 3^{i} \log \left(n_{2} 3^{i}\right)\right)$. Summing over all $i \in\left\{1, \ldots, \log _{4} n_{1}\right\}$, the total time complexity is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
O\left(n_{2}\left(n_{1}^{\log _{4} 3} \log n_{2}+n_{1}^{\log _{4} 3} \log n_{1}\right)\right) \tag{2.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ is a balanced binary tree and if $\left\{\omega_{1}, \ldots, \omega_{k}\right\}$ is the set of nodes at a level of $S D T\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\Delta}\right)$, we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=1}^{k}\left|\mathcal{X}\left(\omega_{j}\right)\right|=O(n+m) \text { and } \sum_{j=1}^{k}\left|P\left(T_{\omega_{j}}\right)\right|=O(n) \tag{2.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, the total time complexity of computing $\mathcal{W}(\nu)$ and the angular order of its vertices for all nodes $\nu$ in all QPTs is $O\left((n+m)^{1+\log _{4} 3} \log ^{2}(n+m)\right)$. Here, we have enough information for computing the kernel segment of each segment $S=\operatorname{seg}(a b) \in \mathcal{S}$. In order to compute the kernel segment, we consider half-line ( $a, b$ ) (similarly half-line $(b, a)$ ) and each rootleaf path in $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ that ends at a leaf whose region contains $a$. Let $\lambda$ be one of these leaf nodes in $S D T\left(\mathbb{T}_{\Delta}\right)$ and $\mu_{\lambda}$ its corresponding root-leaf path. For each node $\omega \in \mu_{\lambda}$, we have $a \in \mathcal{X}(\omega)$. Let $\nu_{a}$ be the leaf-node containing $a$ in its QTP for $\mathcal{X}(\omega)$ and $\pi_{a}$ its corresponding root-leaf path. For each node $\nu \in \pi_{a}$, because $a \in \cap_{H \in L S(\nu)} H$, we can do binary search to find the intersection point of half-line $(a, b)$ and $\partial \mathcal{W}(\nu)$ and keep the furthest such intersection on $\operatorname{half-line}(a, b)$. Let $a_{f}$ (similarly $b_{f}$ ) be the farthest (from $a$ ) intersection point of $\operatorname{half-line}(a, b)$ with $\partial \mathcal{W}(\nu)$ where $\nu$ is a node of a QTP that contains $a$ in its pointset. Based on Equation 2.8, we have:

$$
K S(S)=S \backslash \operatorname{seg}\left(a a_{f}\right) \cup \operatorname{seg}\left(b b_{f}\right)
$$

Procedure COMPUTE-KS( $S$ ) in Algorithm 4 demonstrates this process.

```
Algorithm 4 COMPUTE-KS \((S)\)
    Let \(S=\operatorname{seg}(a b)\).
    Let \(L_{a}\) (resp. \(L_{b}\) ) be the set of leaf-nodes in \(S D T\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\Delta}\right)\) whose regions contains a (resp.
    b).
    for each \(\lambda \in L_{a}\) do (and similarly for \(L_{b}\) )
        Let \(\mu_{\lambda}\) be the root-leaf path to \(\lambda\) in \(S D T\left(\mathcal{T}_{\Delta}\right)\).
        for each node \(\omega \in \mu_{\lambda}\) do
            Let \(\mathcal{Q}_{\omega}\) be the QPT for \(\mathcal{X}(\omega)\) containing \(a\).
            Let \(\nu_{a}\) be the leaf-node in \(\mathcal{Q}_{\omega}\) corresponding to the point \(a\).
            Let \(\pi_{a}\) be the root-leaf path to \(\nu_{a}\) in \(\mathcal{Q}_{\omega}\).
            for each node \(\nu \in \pi_{a}\) do
                Find the intersection point of half-line \((a, b)\) with \(\partial \mathcal{W}(\nu)\).
                    Keep track of the farthest intersection point \(a_{f}\) on \(\operatorname{half}\)-line \((a, b)\) from \(a\).
            end for
        end for
    end for
    Set \(K S(S)=S \backslash\left\{\operatorname{seg}\left(a a_{f}\right) \cup \operatorname{seg}\left(b b_{f}\right)\right\}\).
```

Note that in Algorithm 4, $K S(S)$ might be the empty set. In order to analyse COMPUTE$\mathrm{KS}(S)$, first note that

$$
\sum_{\operatorname{seg}(a b) \in \mathcal{S}}\left|L_{a}\right|=O(n+m)
$$

This is because of our general assumption that no three points are collinear and the fact that $\Delta$ has linear number of triangles and each triangles has three vertices. So, if $a$ is an endpoint of a segment that is not a vertex of $\partial P$, it can lie in at most two leaf-nodes of $S D T\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\Delta}\right)$. Now, for each leaf-node $\lambda \in L_{a}$, we have $O(\log n)$ nodes on $\mu_{\lambda}$ and for each node of $\mu_{\lambda}$, we have $O(\log m)$ nodes on $\pi_{a}$. Finally, for each node $\nu$ of $\pi_{a}$, we need to do a binary search on the vertices of the $\partial \mathcal{W}(\nu)$. This step is also $\operatorname{costs} O(\log n)$ time. So, the total time complexity of $\operatorname{COMPUTE}-\mathrm{KS}(S)$ is $O\left(\log ^{3}(n+m)\right)$. By running this procedure on each segment in $\mathcal{S}$, we can find the kernel segments of the segments in $\mathcal{S}$ in $O\left(m \log ^{3}(n+m)\right)$ time. Therefore, we can have the following theorem:

Theorem 2.3. The semi-discrete beacon kernel problem can be solved in

$$
O\left((n+m)^{1+\log _{4} 3} \log ^{2}(n+m)\right)
$$

time.

We can immediately see that if we consider $\mathcal{S}$ as the edges of $\partial P$, by solving the SDBKP on $\mathcal{S}$, we can find the beacon kernel points of $P$ on its boundary.

Corollary 2.4. In $O\left(n^{1+\log _{4} 3} \log ^{2} n\right)$ time, we can compute the beacon kernel points of $P$ on its boundary.

## Chapter 3

## Transmitting Particles in Polygonal Domains by Repulsion


#### Abstract

In this chapter ${ }^{1}$, we introduce the problem of transmitting particles to a target point by the effect of a repulsion actuator (repulsor). In this problem, we are given a polygonal domain (a polygon with polygonal holes inside it) $P$ and a target point $t$ inside it. We also assume that initially there is a particle at each point of $P$. The question is which particles can get to the target point $t$ by activating only one repulsor in $P$. We present an efficient polynomial time algorithm to solve this problem.


[^0]

Figure 3.1: The behavior of two particles $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ when we activate a repulsor at $r$ in a polygonal domain $P$. In this example $p_{1}$ can get to the target point $t$ while $p_{2}$ resides at the vertex $v_{2}$.

### 3.1 Background and Previous Works

In contrast to the problems raising from interaction of objects by attraction, problems raising from interaction of objects under the repulsion force have been rarely investigated. In [16], Bose and Shermer studied the effect of putting a repulsor in a convex polygon full of point particles. They gave an $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ time algorithm to compute all locations for putting a repulsor such that all particles gather into a single point. They also gave a linear time algorithm to determine whether such a location exists for a given convex polygon. As another work, in 2020, van Goethem et al. [64] introduced the repulsion region of a point $s$ in polygonal domains. The repulsion region of $s$ is defined as the set of points $p$ in the region for which there exists a repulsor $r$ such that the particle placed at $s$ will eventually reach $p$ under the influence of a repulsor at $r$. They showed that if $P$ is a simple polygon with $n$ vertices, the repulsion region of a point inside it can be computed in $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$ time. In this chapter, we consider another problem regarding the behaviour of point particles under the repulsion force called the particle transmitting problem. In this problem, we have a polygonal domain $P$ and a target point $t$ in its interior. When we activate a repulsor at a point $r$ inside $P$, all particles move away from it until either stop at a corner of $P$ or they hit the target point $t$. Specifically, each particle traverses a path such that at each time it goes in a direction that takes itself farthest from $r$ while it remains inside the polygon. Figure 3.1 shows the behaviour of two particles when we activate a repulsor at the point $r$ in $P$.

A natural question here asks which particles can get to $t$ by activating only one repulsor in $P$. We say a point $x \in P$ is valid if there exists a point $r_{x} \in P$ such that by putting a repulsor at $r_{x}$, the particle at $x$ gets to the target point $t$. According to this definition the problem turns to computing all valid points in $P$ with respect to a given target point $t$. In Section 3.2, we give some basic definitions and essential properties. In Section 3.3, we
present a polynomial time algorithm for the problem. Finally, in Section 3.4 we discuss the time complexity of the algorithm.

### 3.2 Preliminaries and Definitions

Let $x, y$ and $r$ be three points inside the given polygonal domain $P$. We say $r$ can send $x$ to $y$ if by activating a repulsor at $r$ the particle at $x$ gets to $y$. Note that the path that the particle traverses to take itself farthest from $r$ at each time, may not be unique: when the particle hits $\partial P$ (boundary of $P$ ), it might get farther from $r$ by moving clockwise or counter-clockwise around the component (a connected part of $\partial P$ ) that it has hit. So, $r$ can send $x$ to $y$ if there exist such a path that ends up at $y$. Henceforth, instead of saying the particle at $x$ traverses a path we simply say $x$ traverses a path. Also, we say $r$ is a repulsion point for $x$ if $r$ sends $x$ to the target point $t$. We denote the set of all repulsion points for $x$ by $R(x)$. By this notation, the set $\mathcal{A}$ of all valid points of $P$ can be written as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{A}=\{x \in P \mid R(x) \neq \emptyset\} \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $V=\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$ be the set of vertices in $\partial P$. In order to compute $\mathcal{A}$, we first compute the set of all points in $P$ that can be sent to $t$ by a direct path (a line segment) and denote it by $A^{\prime}$. For example, in Figure 3.1, the vertex $v_{3}$ can get to $t$ by a direct path. Then, we compute subsets $A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}$ of $\mathcal{A}$ in which, $A_{i}$ is the set of all points $x \in P$ for which there exist a point $r_{x} \in P$ such that $r_{x}$ can send $x$ to $t$ by a path having $v_{i} t$ as its last segment. For example, in Figure 3.1, $p_{1}$ belongs $A_{3}$ because $v_{3}$ is the last bend point of the path that $p_{1}$ traverses to move away from the repulsor in $r$ before getting to $t$. It is clear that:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{A}=A^{\prime} \cup A_{1} \cup \cdots \cup A_{n} \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

An immediate observation is that if $v_{i}$ is not visible from $t$ then $A_{i}=\emptyset$. For a boundary points $x$ and $y$ we say a path $p$ from $x$ to $y$ has jumps if $p \backslash \partial P$ has $j$ components.

### 3.3 The Algorithm

Let $L=\left\{l_{1}, \ldots, l_{n}\right\}$ where $l_{i}(1 \leq i \leq n)$ is the half-line that starts from $t$ and passes through $v_{i}$. We assume that the vertices are in general position and so, there is no line that passes $t$ and two other vertices (we can have this condition by slightly perturbing the vertices). In order to compute $A^{\prime}$, we first partition the plane into a set of cones having $t$ as their common vertex that obtained by radially adjacent half-lines of $L$. Figure 3.2 shows an example of such cones:


Figure 3.2: Partitioning the plane by the set of cones according to $L$

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be the set of all these cones. Each $C \in \mathcal{C}$ consists of a tip at the point $t$, two half-lines as its boundaries and a set of line segments each of which has an endpoint on each of the boundary half-lines of $C$. Within a cone, these segments are internally disjoint so we can have an order on them according to their closeness to $t$. Similarly, they partition the cone into a sequence of regions starting with a triangle having $t$ as its vertex and the first segment as its base. We call this triangle, the first triangle of the cone. It can be easily seen that $A^{\prime}$ is the union of all first triangles of the cones in $\mathcal{C}$ that have more than one segment. So, in order to compute $A^{\prime}$, we only need to compute the subdivision of the plane induced by $\partial P$ and the half-lines in $L$ and consider the cones with more than one segment. This step can be done using the plane-sweep algorithm in $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ time [24, 63].

It remains to compute those valid points that follow a path that bends in order to get $t$. Let $x \in A_{i}$ and so there must be a point $r_{x} \in R(x)$ such that $v_{i}$ is the last bend point of a path that $r_{x}$ sends $x$ to $t$ along. Note that $t$ lies on the interior of $P$ and hence, $r_{x}$ should lie on $l_{i}$ otherwise, $x$ can never reach $t$ after leaving $v_{i}$. Also, note that we can compute each $A_{i}$ individually and then consider their union to specify $\mathcal{A} \backslash A^{\prime}$. Henceforth, we fix the index $i$ and assume that $v_{i}$ is visible from $t$ (otherwise $A_{i}=\emptyset$ ) and discuss how to compute $A_{i}$.

Let $\widehat{l_{i}}=l_{i} \cap P$. To compute $A_{i}$, we first consider a sequence of functions $T^{0}, \ldots, T^{n}$ on $V$ such that for a vertex $v \in V, T^{j}(v)(1 \leq j \leq n)$ is defined as the set of all points $r$ on $\widehat{l_{i}}$ that can send $v$ to $v_{i}$ (and therefore from $v_{i}$ to $t$ ) by at most $j$ jumps.

Proposition 3.1. For a boundary point $x$ and $a$ point $r \in P$, by activating a repulsor at $r, x$ can have at most $n$ jumps before it stops.

This is because if $x$ jumps from an edge of $\partial P$, it can never back to that edge again (because it always moves in a direction that gets father from the repulsor). According to the above proposition, $T^{n}(v)$ returns all of the points on $\widehat{l_{i}}$ that can send $v$ to $v_{i}$. In order to build this sequence of functions, we use a procedure called expand. This procedure gets


Figure 3.3: $\left[v_{i}, x\right], u_{e}(y)$ and the pushing region of $y$.
$T^{j-1}$ as its input and builds $T^{j}$. Running this procedure $n$ times starting from $T^{0}$ gives us $T^{n}$. In the next sections, we discuss how to compute $T_{0}$ and the procedure expand.

### 3.3.1 Computing $\mathrm{T}^{0}$

Lets $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ be the two incident edges of $v_{i}$. We can consider that $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ lie on a same side of $l_{i}$ otherwise it is impossible for $v_{i}$ to be the last bend point for a vertex $v \neq v_{i}$ when we have a repulsion on $l_{i}$. Thus, if $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ are on different sides of $l_{i}$, we have $A_{i}=\left\{v_{i}\right\}$. Let $e_{1}$ be the closer edge to $t$ (closer in the sense that if we consider a half-line from $t$ that passes both $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$, its intersection point with $e_{1}$ is closer to $t$ than its intersection point with $e_{2}$ ). For a point $x$ on the component of $v_{i}$ in $\partial P$ ( $\partial P$ may not be connected because $P$ is a polygonal domain), we denote the part of the component between $v_{i}$ and $x$ starting from $e_{2}$ by $\left[v_{i}, x\right]$. We chose this direction because it is impossible for a repulsion point on $\widehat{l_{i}}$ to send a point to $t$ along $e_{1}$. Figure 3.3 shows an example of $\left[v_{i}, x\right]$. Let $e$ be an edge of $\partial P$, then the interior of $P$ should lie on one side of $e$. We call this side as the $P$-side of $e$. Also, the supporting line of $e$ divides the plane into two half-planes. Denote the half-plane not in the $P$-side of $e$ by $H_{e}$. For a point $x \in \partial P$, we define $J(x) \subseteq \widehat{l_{i}}$ as the set of points $r \in \widehat{l_{i}}$ such that when we activate a repulsor at $r, x$ immediately jumps off from the boundary. Figure 3.3 shows an example of $J(y)$ for a point $y$ on the interior of an edge of $\partial P$. The following proposition shows the connection between $J(x)$ and the edge(s) containing it:

Proposition 3.2. For any point $x \in \partial P$, we have:

1. If $x$ lies on the interior of an edge e we have $J(x)=H_{e} \cap \widehat{l_{i}}$.
2. If $x$ is a reflex vertex with incident edges $e^{\prime}$ and $e^{\prime \prime}$, we have $J(x)=\left(H_{e^{\prime}} \cup H_{e^{\prime \prime}}\right) \cap \widehat{l_{i}}$.
3. If $x$ is a convex vertex with incident edges $e^{\prime}$ and $e^{\prime \prime}$, we have $J(x)=H_{e^{\prime}} \cap H_{e^{\prime \prime}} \cap \widehat{l_{i}}$.

Proposition 3.2 says that if $x$ is a reflex vertex, putting a repulsor at a point in $\widehat{l_{i}}$ makes $x$ jump if and only if the repulsor makes it jump from one of the supporting lines of $e^{\prime}$ and $e^{\prime \prime}$. Similarly, if $x$ is a convex vertex, $x$ jumps if and only if a repulsor make it jump from both the supporting lines of $e^{\prime}$ and $e^{\prime \prime}$. Figure 3.4 shows an example:

x is a reflex vertex

x is a convex vertex

Figure 3.4: When we activate a repulsor on $J(x), x$ jumps immediately into the interior of $P$.

Let us denote the supporting line of $l_{i}$ by $\sup \left(l_{i}\right)$. For a point $x$ on an edge $e$ of $\partial P$, consider the half-line from $x$ perpendicular to $e$ toward the $P$-side of $e$. If this half-line intersects $\sup \left(l_{i}\right)$, we denote this intersection point by $u_{e}(x)$ otherwise $u_{e}(x)$ is undefined. Note that if $e$ does not intersect $\sup \left(l_{i}\right)$, then $u_{e}$ is defined for either all or none of the points of $e$. In the first case, we simply say that $u_{e}$ is defined and in the second case we say $u_{e}$ is undefined. For a point $x$ on the component of $v_{i}$, we say a point $r \in \widehat{l_{i}}$ pushes $x$ into $\left[v_{i}, x\right]$ if by activating a repulsor at $r, x$ moves along the component toward the inside of $\left[v_{i}, x\right]$ ( $x$ does not jump off from the boundary and enters to the interior of $\left[v_{i}, x\right]$ ). We define the pushing region of $x$ as the set of points in $\widehat{l_{i}}$ that push $x$ into $\left[v_{i}, x\right]$ and denote it by $\operatorname{Push}(x)$. For $v_{i}$, we define $\operatorname{Push}\left(v_{i}\right)=\widehat{l_{i}} \backslash t v_{i}$. Figure 3.3 shows the pushing region of the point $y$.

Let $\left(f_{0}, f_{1}, f_{2}, \ldots\right)$ be the sequence of intersection points of the component of $v_{i}$ and $\sup \left(l_{i}\right)$ when we traverse it from $v_{i}$ starting along $e_{2}\left(\right.$ so, $\left.f_{0}=v_{i}\right)$. These $f_{i}$ points break each edge of the component of $v_{i}$ passing through $\sup \left(l_{i}\right)$ into two parts. We consider each of these parts as a separate edge. By this modification, we have the sequence ( $e_{2}, e_{3}, \ldots, e_{1}$ ) of edges of the component of $v_{i}$ and the order on this sequence is the order as we traverse the component starting from $e_{2}$. Also, each edge lies in one side of $\sup \left(l_{i}\right)$. We assume $e\left(f_{k}\right)$ as the incident edge of $f_{k}$ on $\left[v_{i}, f_{k}\right]$ (consider $e\left(f_{0}\right)$ as $\left.e_{1}\right)$. So, $\left(e_{2}, e_{3}, \ldots, e\left(f_{1}\right)\right)$ is the sequence of edges in $\left[v_{i}, f_{1}\right]$. Orient $P$ so that $\overrightarrow{v_{i} t}$ is directing leftward. For any edge $e_{k} \in\left(e_{2}, \ldots, e\left(f_{1}\right)\right)$, we denote its right vertex by $a\left(e_{k}\right)$ and its left vertex by $b\left(e_{k}\right)$. Then we have:

Proposition 3.3. $u_{e_{k}}$ is defined if and only if traversing the boundary starting from any point in $e_{k}$ in the direction $\overrightarrow{a\left(e_{k}\right) b\left(e_{k}\right)}$ goes to $v_{i}$ via $e_{2}$.

Proof. We proceed by induction on $k$. Trivially the proposition is true for $e_{2}$ (this is because $e_{2}$ is the farther incident edge of $v_{i}$ to $t$ ). Suppose that the above statements is true up to the edge $e_{k-1}$. Now, for the connection of $e_{k-1}$ and $e_{k}$ four cases may occur: $a\left(e_{k}\right)=a\left(e_{k-1}\right), a\left(e_{k}\right)=b\left(e_{k-1}\right), b\left(e_{k}\right)=a\left(e_{k-1}\right)$ and $b\left(e_{k}\right)=b\left(e_{k-1}\right)$. Also, each of $u_{e_{k-1}}$ and $u_{e}$ may be defined or undefined which gives us 16 cases. But, because $e_{k-1}$ and $e_{k}$ are neighbour edges, it is impossible that $a\left(e_{k}\right)=a\left(e_{k-1}\right)$ or $b\left(e_{k}\right)=b\left(e_{k-1}\right)$ and both $u_{e_{k-1}}$ and $u_{e}$ are defined or undefined. Similarly, it is impossible that $a\left(e_{k}\right)=b\left(e_{k-1}\right)$ or $b\left(e_{k}\right)=a\left(e_{k-1}\right)$ and one of $e_{k}$ or $e_{k-1}$ is defined and another isn't. So, eight cases left. Note that in these eight cases, four of them are exactly the mirror of others which exchanges left and right vertices. So, four cases left which is shown in Figure 3.5:


Figure 3.5: Consistency of directions to $v_{i}$ in $e_{k-1}$ and $e_{k}$ according to the Proposition 3.3.

In (a) of Figure 3.5, both $u_{e_{k-1}}$ and $u_{e_{k}}$ are defined and in (d) they are undefined. Also, in (b) and (c) $u_{e_{k}}$ (resp. $u_{e_{k-1}}$ ) is defined (resp. undefined). As we can see, for all of these cases, the direction that the proposition gives for $e_{k}$ is consistent with the direction the proposition gives for $e_{k-1}$ and so this direction should go toward $v_{i}$ along $e_{2}$ which proves the proposition.

Corollary 3.1. We can extend the above proposition for each part $\left[f_{m}, f_{m+1}\right]$ of the component of $v_{i}$ as follows:

1. If $m$ is even, for $e_{k} \in\left(e\left(f_{m}\right)+1, \ldots, e\left(f_{m+1}\right)\right)$, $u_{e_{k}}$ is defined if and only if the direction $\overrightarrow{a\left(e_{k}\right) b\left(e_{k}\right)}$ goes to $v_{i}$ via $e_{2}$.
2. If $m$ is odd, for $e_{k} \in\left(e\left(f_{m}\right)+1, \ldots, e\left(f_{m+1}\right)\right)$, $u_{e_{k}}$ is defined if and only if the direction $\overrightarrow{b\left(e_{k}\right) a\left(e_{k}\right)}$ goes to $v_{i}$ via $e_{2}$.

The proof of the above corollary is obtained from the proof of Proposition 3.3 by simply replacing $e_{2}$ by $e\left(f_{m}\right)+1$. For a given point $z \in l_{i}$, we introduce notations $\dot{z}$ and $\ddot{z}$ as follows: $z$ divides $l_{i}$ into two parts each in one side of $z$. We denote the intersection of $t z$ with $P$ by $\dot{z}$, and the intersection of the side that does not contain $t$ with $P$ by $\ddot{z}$.

Corollary 3.2. Let $x$ be a point of an edge $e \in\left[f_{m}, f_{m+1}\right]$ (if $x$ is a vertex, consider the edge in $\left.\left[v_{i}, x\right]\right)$ such that $u_{e}$ is defined. Then :

1. If $m$ is even:
(a) If $u_{e}(x) \in \sup \left(l_{i}\right) \backslash l_{i}$ then Push $(x)=\widehat{l_{i}} \backslash J(x)$.
(b) If $u_{e}(x) \in l_{i}$, we have $\operatorname{Push}(x)=u_{e}(x) \backslash J(x)$.
2. If $m$ is odd:
(a) If $u_{e}(x) \in \sup \left(l_{i}\right) \backslash l_{i}$ then $\operatorname{Push}(x)=\emptyset$.
(b) If $u_{e}(x) \in l_{i}$, we have $\operatorname{Push}(x)=\dot{u_{e}}(x) \backslash J(x)$.

Proof. Suppose that $r$ is a point of $\widehat{l_{i}}$. Note that if $r \in J(x)$, then it can not push $x$ into the interior of $\left[v_{i}, x\right]$ so suppose that $r \notin J(x)$. According to Corollary 3.1, if $e$ lies on the same side of $e_{2}$ with respect to $\sup \left(l_{i}\right)$, in order that $x$ goes to the interior of $\left[v_{i}, x\right], r$ should push $x$ to the left. This can happen if and only if $r$ lies on the right side of $u_{e}(x)$. Similarly, if $e$ lies on the opposite side of $e_{2}$ with respect to $\sup \left(l_{i}\right), r$ should push $x$ to the right side to sent it into the interior of $\left[v_{i}, x\right]$ and this happens only if $r$ lies on the left side $u_{e}(x)$. Note that if $m$ is even (resp. odd), $e$ must lie on the same side (resp. opposite side) of $e_{2}$ with respect to $\sup \left(l_{i}\right)$ which proves the corollary.

If an edge $e$ is not defined, its pushing region (all of its points) is determined by the intersection point of $\sup (e)$ and $\sup \left(l_{i}\right)$ (the points on the $P$-side of $\sup (e)$ on $\hat{l}_{i}$ always pushes any point $x \in e$ into $\left.\left[v_{i}, x\right]\right)$. For a vertex $v$ on the component of $v_{i}$, we define $T^{0}(v)$ as the intersection of all pushing regions of points in $\left[v_{i}, v\right]$.

Observation 3.1. $T^{0}(v)$ is exactly the set of repulsion points of $v$ that sends the particle at $v$ along $\left[v_{i}, v\right]$ to the vertex $v_{i}$ and then, make it jump from $v_{i}$ to $t$.

Note that $T^{0}(v)$ is a set of intervals because it is an intersection of regions each of which consists of a set of disjoint intervals on $l_{i}$. Therefore, in order to obtain $T^{0}(v)$ for a given vertex $v$, we need to have the pushing region of infinitely many points but if we consider the inclusion relation on these pushing regions as a partial order on them, it is enough to only consider the minimal pushing regions.

Observation 3.2. For a given vertex $v$, the minimal pushing regions of points in $\left[v_{i}, v\right]$ are among the following candidate regions:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { Candidate regions for } v=\left\{P u s h\left(v^{\prime}\right) \mid v^{\prime} \text { is a vertex in }\left[v_{i}, v\right]\right\} \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

To see why, first note that for any edge $e, J(x)$ is the same for all $x \in e$. So, for any point $x$ on the interior of $e$, by slightly moving $x$ on $e$ we can get a pushing region not
greater than the pushing region of $x$. Thus, in order to compute $T^{0}(v)$ for a given vertex $v$, we first compute these candidate regions according to Corollary 3.2. Then, we intersect them to obtain $T^{0}(v)$. Because $T^{0}(v)$ is a set of disjoint intervals, we can represent it with a sequence of points with even length according to their closeness to $t$. In this representation, the first and the second elements of the sequence represent the first interval and so on. Also, because all points are on $l_{i}$, we can represent each point by its distance to $t$.

### 3.3.2 The Expand Procedure

To explain the expand procedure, we assume that we have computed $T^{j-1}(v)$ for all vertices in $V$ and discuss how to compute $T^{j}(v)$ for a given vertex $v \in V$. Because each point can have at most $n$ jumps when we put a repulsor in $P$, we can say $v \in A_{i}$ if and only if $T^{n}(v) \neq \emptyset$. For a fixed vertex $v \in V$, we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
T^{j}(v)=\left(T^{j}(v) \cap J(v)\right) \cup\left(T^{j}(v) \cap \overline{J(v)}\right) \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\overline{J(v)}$ is the complement of $J(v)$ with respect to $\widehat{l}_{i}$. In the above equation, let us call the first intersection by $N_{1}(v)$ and the second intersection by $N_{2}(v)$. We first compute $N_{1}(v)$ for all vertices and then compute $N_{2}(v)$ for each vertex in $V$ using our information about $N_{1}(v)$ for the vertices of $P$. By computing the union of $N_{1}(v)$ and $N_{2}(v)$ for each vertex, we can obtain $T^{j}(v)$.

## Computing $\mathrm{N}_{\mathbf{1}}(\mathrm{v})$.

In order to compute $N_{1}(v)$, we need a map of $J(v)$ denoted by $M_{v}^{1}$. For each vertex $v^{\prime} \in V$, there is a corresponding region in $M_{v}^{1}$ denoted by $M_{v}^{1}\left(v^{\prime}\right)$ such that for all $z \in M_{v}^{1}\left(v^{\prime}\right)$, $z$ makes $v$ jump off from the boundary and then sends it to $v^{\prime}$ as its first visiting vertex ( $v^{\prime}$ is the first vertex that $v$ reaches after jumping). Note that some regions of $M_{v}^{1}$ might be empty. To construct this partition, we build the visible triangle decomposition of $P$ with respect to $v$ denoted by $\operatorname{VTD}(v)$. This decomposition partitions the region of $P$ visible from $v$ by the set of line segments from $v$ passing all vertices visible from $v$. Figure 3.6 shows an example of $V T D(v)$.


Figure 3.6: Visible triangle decomposition of $P$ according to $v$.
Let $v a b$ be a triangle in $\operatorname{VTD}(v)$ with base edge $e=a b$ and sides $v a$ and $v b$. Note that $a$ and $b$ may not be vertices of $P$. Also, let $c_{v a b}$ be the opposite cone of the triangle (the cone with vertex $v$ and half-line sides along $v a$ and $v b$ from $v$ in the directions of $\overrightarrow{a v}$ and $\overrightarrow{b v}$ respectively). Also, let $\widetilde{v a b}$ be the intersection of $c_{v a b}$ with $\widehat{l_{i}}$. $\widetilde{v a b}$ becomes empty if there is no such intersection. In this case, no point on $\widehat{l_{i}}$ that can make $v$ jump into the triangle and thus, we don't consider this triangle in computation of $N_{1}(v)$. So, we assume that $\widetilde{v a b} \neq \emptyset$. The property of $\widetilde{v a b}$ is that any point in this region makes $v$ jump into triangle $v a b$. If we denote the vertices of $P$ next to $a$ and $b$ by $a^{\prime}$ and $b^{\prime}$ respectively, we can find the partition of $\widetilde{v a b}$ into subsets $\widetilde{v a b}_{a}$ and $\widetilde{v a b}_{b}$ such that the points in $\widetilde{v a b}_{a}$ send $v$ to $a^{\prime}$ and the points in $\widetilde{v a b}_{b}$ sends $v$ to $b^{\prime}$ (it is possible that one of these part becomes empty). Figure 3.7 shows this configuration:


Figure 3.7: Obtaining $\widetilde{v a b}_{a}$ and $\widetilde{v a b}_{b}$.
In order to compute $\widetilde{v a b}_{a}$ and $\widetilde{v a b}_{b}$, consider the line $h$ perpendicular to the supporting line of $e$ passing through $v$. The intersection point $h_{0}$ of $h$ and $\sup \left(l_{i}\right)$, divides $\sup \left(l_{i}\right)$ into two parts. The intersection of these parts with $\widetilde{v a b}$ becomes $\widetilde{v a b}_{a}$ and $\widetilde{v a b} b$. In fact, points in the $b$-side (resp. $a$-side) of $h$ in $\widetilde{v a b}$, sends $v$ to $a^{\prime}$ (resp. $b^{\prime}$ ). We apply the above method to all triangles in $\operatorname{VTD}(v)$ and put all regions on $J(v)$ that send $v$ to $v^{\prime}$ in $M_{v}^{1}\left(v^{\prime}\right)$. Having
the map $M_{v}^{1}$, we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
N_{1}(v)=\bigcup_{v^{\prime} \in V}\left(M_{v}^{1}\left(v^{\prime}\right) \cap T^{j-1}\left(v^{\prime}\right)\right) \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is because if for a vertex $v^{\prime}$, a point $r$ is in $M_{v}^{1}\left(v^{\prime}\right) \cap T^{j-1}\left(v^{\prime}\right), r$ sends $v$ to $v^{\prime}$ and because $r$ is also in $T^{j-1}\left(v^{\prime}\right), r$ can send it from $v^{\prime}$ to $v_{i}$ using at most $j-1$ jumps. So, in total $r$ can send $v$ to $v_{i}$ by at most $j$ jumps.

## Computing $\mathrm{N}_{2}(\mathrm{v})$.

In order to obtain $N_{2}(v)$, again we need a map on $\overline{J(v)}$ denoted by $M_{v}^{2}$. In this map, for each vertex $v^{\prime} \in V$, there is a corresponding region in $M_{v}^{2}$ denoted by $M_{v}^{2}\left(v^{\prime}\right)$ which is the subset of $\overline{J(v)}$ such that each $z \in M_{v}^{2}\left(v^{\prime}\right)$ sends $v$ to $v^{\prime}$ without jumping ( $v^{\prime}$ is not necessarily the first vertex that $v$ reaches). According to this definition, the regions of $M_{v}^{2}$ may overlap each other and some regions may become a subset of another. Instead of directly computing $M_{v}^{2}$, we compute two maps $M_{v}^{21}$ and $M_{v}^{22}$ separately such that each $z \in M_{v}^{21}\left(v^{\prime}\right)$ (resp. $\left.z \in M_{v}^{22}\left(v^{\prime}\right)\right)$ sends $v$ to $v^{\prime}$ without jumping on the clockwise (resp. counter-clockwise) path on the component of $v$. It is clear that:

$$
\begin{equation*}
M_{v}^{2}\left(v^{\prime}\right)=M_{v}^{21}\left(v^{\prime}\right) \cup M_{v}^{22}\left(v^{\prime}\right) \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

We describe how to compute $M_{v}^{21}$ and computing $M_{v}^{22}$ is similar. We assume that $M_{v}^{21}(v)=$ $\overline{J(v)}$. It is trivial that if $v^{\prime}$ is not in the component of $v$ we have $M_{v}^{21}\left(v^{\prime}\right)=\emptyset$. Let $e=a b$ be an edge of the component of $v$. The perpendicular line on the supporting line of $e$ passing from $a$ divides the plane into two half-planes. Denote the half-plane doesn't include $b$ by $H_{e}^{a}$. Note that any $r \in H_{e}^{a} \cap \overline{J(a)}$ sends $a$ to $b$ without jumping. So, we have:

Proposition 3.4. If $M_{v}^{21}\left(v^{\prime}\right) \neq \emptyset$ and $v^{\prime \prime}$ is the neighbour of $v^{\prime}$ not in the clockwise path $v v^{\prime}$ on the component. Then we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
M_{v}^{21}\left(v^{\prime \prime}\right)=M_{v}^{21}\left(v^{\prime}\right) \cap H_{v^{\prime} v^{\prime \prime}}^{v^{\prime}} \cap \overline{J\left(v^{\prime}\right)} \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

According to the above proposition, we can start from $v$ and traverse the component of $v$ clockwise and build the regions of $M_{v}^{21}$ (note that there must be a vertex $v^{\prime}$ on the component with $\left.M_{v}^{21}\left(v^{\prime}\right)=\emptyset\right)$. After computing $M_{v}^{2}$, we can construct $N_{2}(v)$ as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
N_{2}(v)=\bigcup_{v^{\prime} \in V}\left(M_{v}^{2}\left(v^{\prime}\right) \cap N_{1}\left(v^{\prime}\right)\right) \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that if $r \in M_{v}^{2}\left(v^{\prime}\right) \cap N_{1}\left(v^{\prime}\right)$ for a vertex $v^{\prime} \in V, r$ can send $v$ to $v^{\prime}$ without jumping and because $r \in N_{1}\left(v^{\prime}\right), r$ can send it from $v^{\prime}$ to $v_{i}$ using at most $j$ jumps. This means that $r$ can send $v$ to $v_{i}$ with at most $j$ jumps.

### 3.3.3 Building $\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{i}}$

After computing $N_{2}(v)$, we have $T^{j}(v)=N_{1}(v) \cup N_{2}(v)$ and we go for the next iteration until computing $T^{n}(v)$ for all vertices $v \in V$. We include all vertices with $T^{n}(v) \neq \emptyset$ in $A_{i}$. Now, a point $x \in P$ is in $A_{i}$ if there exist $r \in \widehat{l_{i}}$ that sends $x$ to a vertex $v$ as its first visiting vertex and $r \in T^{n}(v)$. To obtain all points in $A_{i}$, we consider each pair ( $v, e$ ) individually where $v$ is a vertex in $V$ and $e$ is an incident edge of $v$ and compute a set $A_{i}^{(v, e)}$ which is the subset of $A_{i}$ that can be sent to $v_{i}$ by reaching $v$ as their first vertex via $e$. So, we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{i}=\bigcup_{\text {All pairs }(v, e)} A_{i}^{(v, e)} \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, suppose that a pair $(v, e)$ is given and we discuss how to compute $A_{i}^{(v, e)}$. Let $I_{1}, \ldots, I_{q}$ be the set of intervals of $T^{n}(v)$. We denote by $A_{i}^{v}(k)$ as the set of all points of $P$ that can be sent to $v$ as their first visiting vertex via $e$ by some point in $I_{k}(1 \leq k \leq q)$. So,

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{i}^{(v, e)}=\bigcup_{k \in\{1, \ldots, q\}} A_{i}^{(v, e)}(k) \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Again we just need to compute each $A_{i}^{(v, e)}(k)$ independently. Let $I_{k}=\left[r_{1}^{k}, r_{2}^{k}\right]$ where $r_{1}^{k}$ and $r_{2}^{k}$ are two endpoints of $I_{k}$. For two points $r \in\left[r_{1}^{k}, r_{2}^{k}\right]$ and $y$ on $e$, the segment $r y$ might have some intersections with $\partial P$ and so, these intersection points divide $r y$ into a set of segments. We call the segment incident to $e$ as the first segment of $r y$ and denote it by $F S(r y)$. Note that it is impossible for the points on $r y \backslash F S(r y)$ to reach $v$ as their first visiting vertex. Also, let $p(r)$ be the intersection point of $\sup (e)$ and the line perpendicular to $\sup (e)$ passing from $r$. Now, $F S(r y) \subseteq A_{i}^{(v, e)}(k)$ if and only if $y \in e \cap v p(r)$. So, for a given point $r \in I_{k}$, we can compute the set of all such $F S(r y)$ as follows: we consider the set of lines passing through $r$ and every vertex inside the triangle obtained by $r$ and the endpoints of $e \cap v p(r)$. These lines and $\partial P$ partition the triangle. The union of parts incident with $e$ are exactly the set of all $F S(r y)$ with $y \in e \cap v p(r)$. Figure 3.8 shows such configuration:


Figure 3.8: An example of Region $(r)$.

Lets denote this union by Region $(r)$. So, we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{i}^{(v, e)}(k)=\bigcup_{r \in I_{k}} \operatorname{Region}(r) \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

In order to compute the union of infinitely many regions, let ( $\alpha_{0}, \alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{d_{k}}$ ) be the sequence of points on $I_{k}$ such that $\alpha_{0}=r_{1}^{k}, \alpha_{d_{k}}=r_{2}^{k}$ and for each $0<w<d_{k}, \alpha_{w} p\left(\alpha_{w}\right)$ or $\alpha_{w} v$ passes a vertex of $\partial P$ as we traverse $I_{k}$ from $r_{1}^{k}$ to $r_{2}^{k}$. Now, as $r$ moves from $\alpha_{w}$ to $\alpha_{w+1}$, the segments of the boundary of Region $(r)$ changes uniformly. So, to see that which points are covered by Region $(r)$ when $r$ ranges in [ $\alpha_{w}, \alpha_{w+1}$ ], it is enough to check these segments at $r=\alpha_{w}$ and $r=\alpha_{w+1}$. So, $A_{i}^{(v, e)}(k)$ is computed by considering all intervals $\left[\alpha_{w}, \alpha_{w+1}\right]$.

### 3.4 Complexity of the Algorithm

The first part of the algorithm is computing $A^{\prime}$. It costs $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ to obtain the subdivision (induced by $\partial P$ and the half-lines in $L$ ) and build the cones. Because the total number of segments in each cone is linear, we can check in linear time if a cone has more than one segment and store its first triangle. Since there are a linear number of cones, computing $A^{\prime}$ costs $O\left(n^{2}\right)$. We can also compute the $f_{m}$ s sequence for each vertex $v_{i}$ using this subdivision.

Computing $A_{i}$ takes three independent steps: computing $T^{0}$, computing $T^{n}$ using the expand procedure and building $A_{i}$ having $T^{n}$. In computing $T^{0}$, first we use linear time (using the map we obtained to build cones) to check which vertices are visible from $t$ and find the neighbor edges of the vertices that lie on the same side of the line connecting them to $t$. Computing the $J(v)$ for a vertex $v \in V$ takes linear time. Also, the intersection and union operations can be done linearly. In order to compute $T^{0}(v)$ for a given vertex $v$, we should compute $\dot{u}_{e}\left(v^{\prime}\right) \backslash J\left(v^{\prime}\right)$ or $\ddot{u}_{e}\left(v^{\prime}\right) \backslash J\left(v^{\prime}\right)\left(e\right.$ is incident to $\left.v^{\prime}\right)$ for $O(n)$ vertices which again costs $O\left(n^{2}\right)$. So, building $T^{0}$ costs $O\left(n^{3}\right)$.

In the procedure expand, we need to compute $T^{j}(v)$ for all $v \in V$ having $T^{j-1}$. For a given $v \in V$, the maps $M_{v}^{1}$ and $M_{v}^{2}$ are independent of $j$ and so, we can build them once and use them whenever they are needed in the expand procedure. In order to compute these maps, we spend $O(n \log n)$ time to build $V T D(v)$. Next, we have $O(n)$ triangles and it take constant time for each triangle to obtain $\widetilde{v a b}_{a}$ and $\widetilde{v a b}_{b}$. So, building $M_{v}^{1} \operatorname{costs} O(n \log n)$. Computing each of $M_{v}^{21}$ and $M_{v}^{22}$ costs $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ because we need to traverse the component of $v$ and in each step, we should compute an intersection. So, $M_{v}^{2}$ can be computed in $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ and thus, building these maps for all vertices costs $O\left(n^{3}\right)$.

Note that each $T^{0}(v)$ has at most $O(n)$ endpoints and thus we have at most $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ endpoints in the intervals of $T^{0}(v)$ for all $v \in V$. On the other hand, the regions of both $M_{v}^{1}$ and $M_{v}^{2}$ have at most $O(n)$ endpoints and so, we have at most $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ endpoints for all maps. Now, because we don't introduce any new endpoint in the expand procedure, $T^{n}(v)$
should have at most $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ endpoints. For a fixed vertex $v, T^{j-1}(v) \subseteq T^{j}(v)$. So, in the expand procedure, we can compute the equations (4) and (7) for $T^{j-1}\left(v^{\prime}\right) \backslash T^{j-2}\left(v^{\prime}\right)$ instead of $T^{j-1}\left(v^{\prime}\right)$ and add the results to the $N_{1}(v)$ and $N_{2}(v)$ in the previous iteration to obtain new $N_{1}(v)$ and $N_{2}(v)$. So, by this modification in obtaining $N_{1}(v)$ and $N_{2}(v)$, computing $T^{1}(v), \ldots, T^{n}(v)$ costs $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ and because we have $n$ vertices, computing $T^{n}$ takes $O\left(n^{3}\right)$.

In order to build $A_{i}$, for each pair $(v, e)$, we have at most $O(n) \alpha_{w}$ points in total (for all $I_{k}$ ). We need to spend $O(n \log n)$ time to have these points sorted on each $I_{k}$. Now, for each interval $\left[\alpha_{w}, \alpha_{w+1}\right]$, in a constant time we can obtain which points are covered by Region $(r)$ for some $r$ in this interval. Because we have at most $O(n)$ pairs $(v, e)$, Building $A_{i}$ having $T^{n}$ costs $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$. So, in total building $A_{i}$ costs $O\left(n^{3}+n^{3}+n^{2} \log n\right)=O\left(n^{3}\right)$. Finally, because $i$ varies between 1 and $n$, the total complexity of the algorithm is $O\left(n^{4}\right)$.

## Part II

## The Proximity Connected $k$-center problem

## Chapter 4

## A Sub-quadratic Time Algorithm for the Proximity Connected k-Center Problem on Paths


#### Abstract

In this chapter ${ }^{1}$, we study the proximity connected $k$-center ( PCkCP ) on paths. In this problem, we are given a set of demand points in a path and a parameter $\delta>0$. We are going to locate $k$ center points on the path (centers can lie in the interior of the edges) such that the maximum distance of a demand point to its nearest center is minimized while the centers satisfy the proximity connectedness condition (PCC) with respect to $\delta$. We present a sub-quadratic time algorithm for the problem for both unweighted and weighted demand points cases.


[^1]
### 4.1 Background and Previous Works

The $k$-center problem is one of the most important facility location problems which has been extensively studied in the past $[28,32,40,41,66]$. In the weighted $k$-center problem, we are given a set of $n$ demand points $\mathbb{P}=\left\{v_{1} \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$ in a metric space such that each demand point $v_{i} \in \mathbb{P}$ has a non-negative weight $w_{i}$. The objective is to find a $k$-center (a set of $k$ points in the space) $C$ such that $\operatorname{cost}(C)$ defined as $\max _{v_{i} \in \mathbb{P}}\left\{w_{i} d\left(v_{i}, C\right)\right\}$ is minimized, where $d\left(v_{i}, C\right)=\min _{c \in C} d\left(v_{i}, c\right)$. We call this minimum cost the optimal cost for the problem. If we have unit weights on all demand points, the problem is called unweighted. We recall that a $k$-center $C$ satisfies the proximity connectedness condition (PCC) with respect to a parameter $\delta>0$ if its $\delta$-distance graph is connected. In the proximity connected $k$-center problem ( PCkCP ), in addition to $\mathbb{P}$, we are also given a parameter $\delta>0$ and we are going to find a $k$-center with minimum cost that satisfies the PCC.

In practice, if we consider the centers as facility locations, the parameter $\delta$ can represent the range for which, each facility can directly communicate with any other facility within the range $\delta$ of itself. For example, suppose that we need to locate $k$ communication/control equipment to observe $n$ sensors while the equipment need to send/receive messages between themselves (directly or via other equipment). Also, each equipment can safely send/receive data with any other equipment within the range $\delta$ of itself. The problem of locating the equipment as close as possible to the sensors can be modeled as PCkCP.

If we consider $\delta$ sufficiently large, the problem reduces to the $k$-center problem, the PCkCP becomes NP-hard in metric graphs [32, 53]. In [32], Kariv and Hakimi showed that the $k$-center problem can be solved in polynomial time when the underlying space is a tree and gave an $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$ time algorithm for the problem. In 1991, Frederickson [28, $29]$ showed that the unweighted $k$-center problem can be solved in linear time in trees. Finally, in 2018, Wang and Zhang [66] provided an $O(n \log n)$ time algorithm for the $k$-center problem in trees. The PCC condition first appeared in the context of wireless networks in 1992 [36]. Later, Huang and Tsai studied the 2-center problem in the plane, considering the proximity condition between the centers [37, 38]. As another work, in 2022, Bhattacharya et al. [9] presented an $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$ time algorithm (next chapter) to solve the proximity connected 2-center problem in the plane improving the previous algorithm for the problem with $O\left(n^{5}\right)$ time complexity [36]. Although there are some related works in the context of theory of wireless sensor networks [4, 58], the $k$-center problem has not been studied when we have the proximity condition between the centers. In this chapter, we address this problem by providing a sub-quadratic time algorithm for the $k$-center problem on paths having the PCC.


Figure 4.1: An example of the PCkCP on a path with 8 vertices.

### 4.2 PCkCP for Unweighted Paths

Let $P=\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)$ be the given unweighted path (consisting of both the vertices and the edges between them) such that the vertices lie on the $x$-axis from left to right and $v_{1}$ lies on the origin. Without loss of generality, we assume that $n$ is a power of 2 . Also, we use the notation $v_{i}(1 \leq i \leq n)$ for both the vertex itself and the $x$-coordinate of the vertex. Thus, we have an order on the vertices based on their $x$-coordinates. Also, if $v_{i}<v_{j}$, we denote the interval between $v_{i}$ and $v_{j}$ on the $x$-axis by $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$. In this section, we are going to find a $k$-center $C^{*}$ for $P$ such that $C^{*}$ satisfies PCC and,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{cost}\left(C^{*}\right) & =\min \{\operatorname{cost}(C): \\
& C \text { is a } k \text {-center for } P \text { and satisfies PCC }\}
\end{aligned}
$$

We call $C^{*}$ an optimal solution and its cost the optimal cost. We denote the optimal cost by $r^{*}$ and the centers in $C^{*}$ by $\left(c_{1}^{*}, \ldots, c_{k}^{*}\right)$ from left to right on the $x$-axis. Figure 4.1 shows an example of the PCkCP on a path and its corresponding optimal solution.

The idea of obtaining an optimal solution for the problem is first computing $r^{*}$ and then, using it to build an optimal solution. In order to do that, we first design a feasibility test for the problem which gets a value $r \geq 0$ and determines whether it is feasible $\left(r \geq r^{*}\right)$ or infeasible $\left(r<r^{*}\right)$. Procedure UPATH-FT in Algorithm 5, presents such a feasibility test for the unweighted PCkCP on paths. Note that if $r \geq r^{*}$, $\operatorname{UPATH}-\mathrm{FT}(P, r)$ also gives us a $k$-center with a cost at most $r$. Using the feasibility test, we can check whether $r^{*}=0$. In this case the trivial solution is putting a center at each vertex. So henceforth, we assume that $r^{*}>0$.

```
Algorithm 5 UPATH-FT \((P, r)\)
    Set Counter \(=1\) and \(V=\left(v_{2}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)\).
    Put a center at \(x_{c}=r\).
    while there is an element in \(V\) do
        Eliminate all vertices \(v \in V\) with \(d\left(x_{c}, v\right) \leq r\).
        Put a center at \(x_{c}=\min \left\{x_{c}+\delta, V[1]+r\right\}\).
        Counter \(=\) Counter +1 .
        if Counter \(>k\) then
            return infeasible.
        end if
    end while
    return feasible.
```

Note that in Algorithm 5, the vertices in $V$ are eliminated in order and so the time complexity of UPATH-FT is $O(n+k)$. It is important to mention that we might have more than one optimal solution for a given problem instance but, having $r^{*}$ (which is unique), the algorithm UPATH-FT gives us a unique optimal solution. In order to avoid confusion, henceforth we exclusively use the notation $C^{*}$ for this optimal solution. We say that a vertex $v$ is covered by a center $c_{i}^{*} \in C^{*}$ if $d\left(v, c_{i}^{*}\right)=d\left(v, C^{*}\right)$. Also, $d\left(v, c_{i}^{*}\right)$ is called the cost that $c_{i}^{*}$ induces on $v$. We say that a sequence of $t$ points $\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{t}\right)$ (the order is left to right on the $x$-axis) is a $t$-train if $\forall 1 \leq i<t, d\left(c_{i}, c_{i+1}\right)=\delta$.

Proposition 4.1. There exists a pair of vertices $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ such that the subset $C^{\prime} \subseteq C^{*}$ of centers in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$ is a t-train (for some $t$ ) and $d\left(v_{i}, C^{\prime}\right)=d\left(v_{j}, C^{\prime}\right)=r^{*}$.

The reason for the above proposition is that if such a pair does not exist, for any vertex $v$ with $d\left(v, C^{*}\right)=r^{*}$, we can move the covering center of $v$ (and possibly other centers to ensure the PCC) toward $v$ to get a solution with a cost smaller than $r^{*}$, which contradicts the optimality of $r^{*}$. We call any pair $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ satisfying the condition of Proposition 4.1, a determining pair for the problem.

Proposition 4.2. If $d\left(v_{1}, v_{n}\right) \geq k \delta$, then $\left(v_{1}, v_{n}\right)$ is a determining pair for the problem.
Proof. For any vertex $v$ in $\left[c_{1}^{*}, c_{k}^{*}\right], d\left(v, C^{*}\right)$ is at most $\delta / 2$ because of the PCC. So, if $d\left(v_{1}, v_{n}\right) \geq k \delta$, the cost of $C^{*}$ should be greater than or equal to $\delta / 2$ which means that $\left(v_{1}, v_{n}\right)$ is a determining pair.

Based on the above proposition, if $d\left(v_{1}, v_{n}\right) \geq k \delta$, we have $d\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{k}^{*}\right)=(k-1) \delta$ and $d\left(v_{1}, c_{1}^{*}\right)=d\left(c_{k}^{*}, v_{n}\right)$. Therefore, $r^{*}=\left(d\left(v_{1}, v_{n}\right)-(k-1) \delta\right) / 2$. Now, UPATH-FT $\left(P, r^{*}\right)$ will give us $C^{*}$. Henceforth in this section, we assume that $d\left(v_{1}, v_{n}\right)<k \delta$ and so $0<r^{*}<\delta / 2$ (because of the PCC). In order to find $r^{*}$, we build a set of candidate values $\mathcal{C}$ and iteratively use the feasibility test to discard its values until $r^{*}$ becomes clear. Consider a pair


Figure 4.2: The geometric view of the candidate values generates by $\left(v_{i}, v_{j_{1}}\right)$ and the effective candidate value generated by $\left(v_{i}, v_{j_{2}}\right)$.
of vertices $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ and a $t$-train $T$ such that $d\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)>(t-1) \delta$. We say that $T$ is fitted in [ $\left.v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$ if $d\left(v_{i}, T\right)=d\left(v_{j}, T\right)$. Note that if $T$ is fitted in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$, the induced cost of $T$ on $v_{i}$ and $v_{j}$ is $\left(d\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)-(t-1) \delta\right) / 2$ and is denoted by $I C_{t}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$. If $d\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right) \leq(t-1) \delta$, we say that $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ does not accept a $t$-train. Note that any pair of vertices accepts 1 -train which is indeed the mid-point of the connecting segment of $v_{i}$ and $v_{j}$. Based on Proposition 4.1, the set of candidate values $\mathcal{C}$ can be considered as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{C}=\left\{I C_{t}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right):\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right) \text { accepts a } t \text {-train }\right\} \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because each pair of vertices can generate up to $O(k)$ candidate values, the size of $\mathcal{C}$ is $O\left(n^{2} k\right)$. A naive algorithm to find $r^{*}$ is computing the entire $\mathcal{C}$, then sort it and perform binary search using the feasibility test to find $r^{*}$. It is easy to see that the time complexity of this approach is $O\left(n^{2} k \log (n+k)\right)$. In the rest, we show that how we can reduce this bound and get a sub-quadratic time algorithm but before, it is useful to discuss about the geometric interpretation of the candidate values.

Geometric View: Let $L_{i}$ and $R_{i}$ be two half-lines from $v_{i}$ with angles $\pi / 4$ and $3 \pi / 4$ with the positive direction of the $x$-axis respectively. Note that the $y$-coordinate of the intersection of a vertical line at point $x$ with $L_{i} \cup R_{i}$ is the cost that a center at $x$ will induce on $v_{i}$ (this is because we assumed that the vertices are unweighted). Based on this observation, for a pair $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right), I C_{1}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ is the $y$-coordinate of the intersection point of $R_{i}$ and $L_{j}$. Furthermore, if $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ accepts a $t$-train, $I C_{t}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ would be the $y$-coordinate of the horizontal segment with length $(t-1) \delta$ with sides on $R_{i}$ and $L_{j}$ (see Figure 4.2). Based on this geometric view, the following observation can be concluded:

Observation 4.1. If $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ accepts a $t$-train $(t>1)$ then $I C_{t}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)=I C_{t-1}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)-\delta / 2$.

Consider a pair $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ and the non-zero candidate value $I C_{k^{\prime}}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ such that either $k^{\prime}=k$ or $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ does not accept a $\left(k^{\prime}+1\right)$-train (equivalently, $k^{\prime}$-train is the longest train that can be fitted in $\left.\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)\right)$. According to Observation 4.1, $I C_{k^{\prime}}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ is the only candidate value that $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ can generate in $(0, \delta / 2)$. If $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ generates a candidate value in $(0, \delta / 2)$, we call this candidate value an effective candidate value. Because $r^{*} \in(0, \delta / 2)$, we only need to search the effective candidates generated by the pairs in $P$ in order to find $r^{*}$. Let us gather all the effective candidates into an $n \times n$ matrix $M$ such that $M[i, j]$ is the effective candidate value generated by $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ if $i<j$ and zero otherwise. We can see that $M$ is not a sorted matrix because for a fixed $i$, by increasing $j$, the number of centers in the train that induces $M[i, j]$ might change. Indeed, this is the main obstacle to get a linear time algorithm like $[28,29]$ for the unweighted PCkCP. Specifically, the $k$-center problem is equivalent to the PCkCP when $\delta=\infty$. In this case, all the effective candidates are generated by 1-trains. The key point here is that the effective cost generated by a 1 -train on a pair $\left(v_{i}, v_{i}\right)$ is an increasing function of $d\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$. This monotonicity makes the matrix $M$ sorted which plays a pivotal role in obtaining a linear time algorithm.

In order to search $M$ in a sub-quadratic time, we define an auxiliary matrix $\bar{M}$ such that applying the feasibility test on its elements enables us to discard the elements of $M$ in an efficient way. We define $\bar{M}$ as an $n \times n$ matrix such that:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{M}[i, j]=\max \left\{M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]: i<j^{\prime} \leq j\right\} \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $\bar{M}$ is a row sorted (increasing) matrix but may not be sorted column-wise. We define the remainder function $\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}(x)$ as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}(x)=x-\left\lfloor\frac{x}{\delta}\right\rfloor \times \delta \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Observation 4.2. If $i<j$, then we would have $M[i, j]=\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(d\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)\right) / 2$.
This is from the fact that the size of the portion of $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$ not covered by the longest train in the interval is $\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(d\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)\right)$.

Proposition 4.3. If $M[i, j]=r^{*}$ then for all $i<j^{\prime}<j, M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right] \leq r^{*}$.
Proof: We proceed by contradiction. Suppose that $M[i, j]=r^{*}$ and $\exists j^{\prime}: i<j^{\prime}<j$ such that $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]>r^{*}$. Let $C^{\prime}=\left(c_{h_{1}}^{*}, \ldots, c_{h_{2}}^{*}\right) \subseteq C^{*}$ be the train in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$ that induces $r^{*}$ on $v_{i}$ and $v_{j}$. Also, let $C=\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{q}\right)$ be the longest train that can be fitted in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right]$ that induces the cost $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]$. Note that $|C|<\left|C^{\prime}\right|$, otherwise because $v_{j}^{\prime}<v_{j}, M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]$ could not be greater than $M[i, j]$. Also, $c_{h_{1}}^{*}<c_{1}$ because we assumed $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]>r^{*}$. Now, if $c_{h_{1}+q}^{*}<v_{j^{\prime}}$, we can fit a $(q+1)$-train in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right]$, which contradicts the way we chose $C$. So, let us assume that $c_{h_{1}+q}^{*}>v_{j^{\prime}}$ (see Figure 4.3).


Figure 4.3: Proof of Proposition 4.3.

Here, $c_{h_{1}+q}^{*}$ is the center that covers $v_{j^{\prime}}$ in $C^{*}$. If $d\left(v_{j^{\prime}}, c_{h_{1}+q}^{*}\right)=r^{*}, d\left(v_{i}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right)$ would be a multiple of $\delta$ and so $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]=0$ which is against our assumption that $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]>r^{*}$. Thus, we have $d\left(v_{j^{\prime}}, c_{h_{1}+q}^{*}\right)<r^{*}$ but in this case we can fit a $(q+1)$-train in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right]$ which is a contradiction.

Example: In Figure 4.4, the fitted 4 -train $\left(c_{1}^{*}, \ldots, c_{4}^{*}\right)$ between $v_{1}$ and $v_{j}$ induces the optimal cost $r^{*}$ for the problem. In order to have $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]>r^{*}$ for some $1<j^{\prime}<j, v_{j^{\prime}}$ should lie on a forbidden region, which are the set of points with distances greater than $r^{*}$ to their closest center (these regions are specified in red in Figure 4.4).


Figure 4.4: An example for Proposition 4.3.
Observation 4.3. By applying the feasibility test on $\bar{M}[i, j]$, one of the following cases will happen:

1. $\bar{M}[i, j]$ is feasible. In this case, we can discard all $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]$ with $j^{\prime}>j$ (based on Proposition 4.3).
2. $\bar{M}[i, j]$ is infeasible. In this case, we can discard all $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]$ with $j^{\prime} \leq j$ (based on the definition of $\bar{M})$.

Note that in the part 1 of the above observation, when $\bar{M}[i, j]$ is feasible, then either $\bar{M}[i, j]>r^{*}$ or $\bar{M}[i, j]=r^{*}$. For the former case, if $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]=r^{*}$ for some $j^{\prime}>j$, it contradicts Proposition 4.3 and for the later case we still have $r^{*}$ in our undiscarded values. According to the above observation, we can find $r^{*}$ by iteratively applying the feasibility test on the elements of $\bar{M}$ and discard the elements of $M$ until $r^{*}$ becomes clear. Algorithm DISC-ROUND $(M)$ shows how we can discard $1 / 4^{\text {th }}$ of the undiscarded elements in $M$ at
each iteration. We can see that at the beginning of each iteration the undiscarded elements of each row make a connected region. We call this region the undiscarded region. Because $\bar{M}$ is row sorted, if $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ are the first and the last indices of the undiscarded region of an $i^{t h}$-row in $M$, if we know whether $\bar{M}\left[i, d_{1}+\left\lfloor\left(d_{1}+d_{2}\right) / 2\right\rfloor\right]$ is feasible, we can discard half of the elements in the region. Note that in Algorithm 6, the variables $d_{1}, d_{2}$ and $w_{i}$

```
Algorithm 6 DISC-ROUND \((M)\)
    for \(i\) from 1 to \(n\) do
        Set \(d_{1}, d_{2}\) and \(n_{i}\) as the first index, the last index and the number of elements in
    the undiscarded region of the \(i^{\text {th }}\)-row of \(M\) respectively.
        Set \(m_{i}\) as \(\bar{M}\left[i, d_{1}+\left\lfloor\left(d_{1}+d_{2}\right) / 2\right\rfloor\right]\).
    end for
    Compute the weighted median \(m\) of \(\left\{m_{i}: 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}\) where \(m_{i}\) has weight \(n_{i}\).
    Run UPATH-FT \((P, m)\).
    if \(m\) is feasible then
        For each \(i\) with \(m_{i} \geq m\), discard \(M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]: j^{\prime}>m_{i}\).
    else
        For each \(i\) with \(m_{i} \leq m\), discard \(M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]: j^{\prime} \leq m_{i}\).
    end if
```

can be updated after the discarding phase of the previous iteration (so we don't need to search the entire matrix to compute them at the beginning of the current iteration). Also, we compute the weighted median of the mid-indexes of the undiscarded region of the rows because at the beginning of an iteration, the undiscarded region of the rows in $M$ may not have the same size. We can see that in each iteration, we need to compute the median of $O(n)$ values in $\bar{M}$. The bottleneck of the time complexity of DISC-ROUND is the cost of obtaining an element of $M$. Specifically, if the time complexity of computing an element of $\bar{M}$ is $O(g(n))$, then the total time complexity of DISC-ROUND would be $O(n g(n)+k)$ and so the overall time complexity of our algorithm for the unweighted PCkCP on paths is $O((n g(n)+k) \log n)$ (because we have $O(\log n)$ iterations). In the next subsection, we discuss how we can compute an element of $\bar{M}$ efficiently.

### 4.2.1 Computing an Element of $\bar{M}$

In this subsection, we provide a preprocessing phase that enables us to compute $\bar{M}[i, j]$ in sub-linear time. Let $\mathcal{M}_{i, j}=\{M[i, i+1], \ldots, M[i, j]\}$ and so, $\bar{M}[i, j]=\max \mathcal{M}_{i, j}$. We first build a balanced binary tree $\mathcal{T}$ on top of the vertices in $P$ (we assumed that $n$ is a power of 2 ). Thus, each leave of $\mathcal{T}$ corresponds to a single vertex. For a node $\nu \in \mathcal{T}$, $\operatorname{span}(\nu)$ is defined as the set of vertices that have $\nu$ as a common ancestor. Note that the root of $\mathcal{T}$ spans the entire $P$. Also, we denote the first and the last indexes of the vertices in $\operatorname{span}(\nu)$ by left $(\nu)$ and $\operatorname{right}(\nu)$ respectively. In each node $\nu \in \mathcal{T}$, we store the sequence $\sigma(\nu)$ obtained from sorting $\left\{2 M\left[v_{1}, v\right]: v \in \operatorname{span}(\nu)\right\}$ increasingly. It is easy to see that the time complexity of building $\mathcal{T}$ and the sequences in its nodes is $O(n \log n)$ (see Figure 4.5).


Figure 4.5: Construction of $\mathcal{T}$ on top of $P$.
Observation 4.4. For any two numbers $a$ and $b$, we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}(a+b)=\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}(a)+\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}(b)\right) \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Based on the above observation and Observation 4.2, for any $j^{\prime} \geq i$ we can write $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]$ as:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]=\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(d\left(v_{i}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right)\right) / 2= \\
& \operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(d\left(v_{1}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right)-d\left(v_{1}, v_{i}\right)\right) / 2= \\
& \operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(d\left(v_{1}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right)\right)-\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(d\left(v_{1}, v_{i}\right)\right)\right) / 2= \\
& \operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(2 M\left[v_{1}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right]-2 M\left[v_{1}, v_{i}\right]\right) / 2
\end{aligned}
$$

Now, for each vertex $\nu$ with $\sigma(\nu)=\left(s_{1}, \ldots, s_{t}\right)$ and $i \leq l e f t(\nu)$, we define $\sigma_{i}(\nu)$ as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{i}(\nu)=\left(\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(s_{1}-2 M\left[v_{1}, v_{i}\right]\right), \ldots, \operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(s_{t}-2 M\left[v_{1}, v_{i}\right]\right)\right) \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $\mu_{i}(\nu)$ be the maximum of $\sigma_{i}(\nu)$. Based on the above argument, we can see

$$
\max \{M[\operatorname{left}(\nu), \operatorname{left}(\nu)+1], \ldots, M[\operatorname{left}(\nu), \operatorname{right}(\nu)]\}
$$

is indeed $\mu_{i}(\nu) / 2$. An important observation here is that because the elements of $M$ are at most $\delta / 2, \sigma_{i}(\nu)$ is a concatenation of two sorted sequences namely $\sigma_{i}^{1}(\nu)$ and $\sigma_{i}^{2}(\nu)$ (note that one of these sequences might be empty). So, in order to find $\mu_{i}(\nu)$, we need to compare the last elements of $\sigma_{i}^{1}(\nu)$ and $\sigma_{i}^{2}(\nu)$ (if they exist) and pick the greater value. Specifically, if $s_{j^{\prime}}-2 M\left[v_{1}, v_{i}\right]$ is negative (resp. positive) for some $s_{j^{\prime}} \in \sigma(\nu), \operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(s_{j^{\prime}}-2 M\left[v_{1}, v_{i}\right]\right)$ belongs to $\sigma_{i}^{1}(\nu)$ (resp. $\sigma_{i}^{2}(\nu)$ ). Thus, we can do binary search to obtain the index of the last element of $\sigma_{i}^{1}(\nu)$ and so $\mu_{i}(\nu)$ in $O(\log |\operatorname{span}(\nu)|)$ time.

We can use the above data structure to find $\bar{M}[i, j]$ as follows: we first obtain two paths $\pi_{i}$ and $\pi_{j}$ and their split vertex $\nu_{\text {split }}$ from the root of $\mathcal{T}$ to $v_{i}$ and $v_{j}$ respectively. Let $\mathcal{V}_{i, j}$ be the set of right (resp. left) children of $\pi_{i}$ (resp. $\pi_{j}$ ) from $\nu_{\text {split }}$ to its leaf (including $v_{j}$ ). Now, $\mathcal{M}_{i, j}=1 / 2 \cup_{\nu \in \mathcal{V}_{i, j}} \sigma_{i}(\nu)$ where the multiplication is done element-wise. Therefore,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{M}[i, j]=\max \mathcal{M}_{i, j}=\max \left\{\mu_{i}(\nu): \nu \in \mathcal{V}_{i, j}\right\} \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

because $\left|\mathcal{V}_{i, j}\right|=O(\log n)$ and computing each $\mu_{i}(\nu)$ in (4.6) also costs $O(\log n)$, the total time complexity of computing $\bar{M}[i, j]$ is $O\left(\log ^{2} n\right)$ which leads to an overall $O\left(\left(n \log ^{2} n+\right.\right.$ $k) \log n$ ) time complexity for the PCkCP in unweighted paths.

Further improvements: First, we observe that if for two nodes $\nu, \nu^{\prime} \in \mathcal{T}, \nu^{\prime}$ is a parent of $\nu$ then $\sigma(\nu)$ is a sub-sequence of $\sigma\left(\nu^{\prime}\right)$. This property enables us to use a technique called fractional cascading [24] to avoid doing binary search on each of the nodes in $\mathcal{V}_{i, j}$ to find their maximum. Specifically, we equip each element $s$ of $\sigma\left(\nu^{\prime}\right)$ with a pointer that points to the smallest element in $\nu$ larger than or equal to $s$. This structure can be constructed in $O(n \log n)$ time [24]. So, in order to obtain all $\left\{\mu_{i}(\nu): \nu \in \mathcal{V}_{i, j}\right\}$, we only perform one binary search on $\sigma_{i}(\operatorname{root}(\mathcal{T}))$ with cost $O(\log n)$ and follow the pointers along the paths to obtain each $\mu_{i}(\nu): \nu \in \mathcal{V}_{i, j}$ in a constant time. So, the total time complexity of computing $\bar{M}[i, j]$ is $O(\log n)$ and so, the total running time is $O((n \log n+k) \log n)$.

As another improvement, note that we only need to do binary search on $\sigma_{i}(\operatorname{root}(\mathcal{T}))$ once for each row $i$ in the entire algorithm. Also, by spending $O(n \log n)$ time, for each root-leaf path $\pi_{i}$ and each $\nu^{\prime} \in \pi_{i}$, we can store $\max \left\{\mu_{i}(\nu): \nu\right.$ is right child of a node in $\left.\pi_{i}\left[\nu^{\prime}, v_{i}\right]\right\}$ in $\nu^{\prime}\left(\pi_{i}\left[\nu^{\prime}, v_{i}\right]\right.$ is the portion of $\pi_{i}$ from $\nu^{\prime}$ to $\left.v_{i}\right)$ by walking along $\pi_{i}$ twice (once for computing $\mu_{i} \mathrm{~s}$ and once for storing the maxes). So, having $\nu_{\text {split }}$, we only need to take care about computing $\max \left\{\mu_{i}(\nu): \nu \in \mathcal{V}_{i, j}\right.$ and hanging from $\left.\pi_{j}\right\}$. To address this problem, consider a fixed $i^{\text {th }}$-row. Based on Algorithm 6, at each iteration $r$, the undiscarded region of the $i^{\text {th }}$-row corresponds to $\operatorname{span}\left(\nu^{r}\right)$ for some $\nu^{r} \in \mathcal{T}$. Let $\nu_{m}^{r}$ be the left child of $\nu^{r}$ (if we are not at the last iteration) with $m^{r}=\operatorname{right}\left(\nu_{m}^{r}\right)$. We can see that $m^{r}$ is the median of the undiscarded region. Now, $\nu_{m}^{r+1}$ is either the left child of $\nu_{m}^{r}$ or the left child of the right neighbor of $\nu_{m}^{r}$. Let $r_{0}$ be the last iteration for which $\nu_{m}^{r_{0}}$ is on $\pi_{i}$. For iterations $r \leq r_{0}$, we only need to consider the maximum of the values in $\sigma_{i}\left(\nu^{\prime}\right)$ where $\nu^{\prime}$ the first right child on $\pi_{i}$ after $\nu_{m}^{r}$. Also, for iterations $r>r_{0}$, we only need to have the set of maximum values in the left hanging nodes of $\pi_{m^{r}}\left[\nu_{\text {split }}, \nu_{m}^{r}\right]$ and $\nu_{m}^{r}$ itself. Now, it is easy to see that as $r$ increases to $r+1$, these set of values can be updated in a constant time. Thus, we can conclude that computing $\bar{M}\left[i, m^{r}\right]$ for all iterations $r$ only takes $O(\log n)$ time and because we have linear number of rows, we would have the following theorem:

Theorem 4.1. The unweighted PCkCP can be solved in $O((n+k) \log n)$ time.

### 4.3 PCkCP for Weighted Paths

Let $P=\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)$ be the given weighted path such that $w_{i}$ is the weight of $v_{i}$. For a point $x$ on $P$, we define $w d\left(v_{i}, x\right)=w_{i} d\left(v_{i}, x\right)$. Again each pair of vertices $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ generates $O(k)$ candidate values which corresponds to the trains that can be fitted in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$. Here, because the weights of $v_{i}$ and $v_{j}$ might be different, a train may not be required to have the same distance from $v_{i}$ and $v_{j}$ in order to induce the same cost on them. Again, we denote the cost that a fitted $t$-train in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$ induces on $v_{i}$ and $v_{j}$ by $I C_{t}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$. Suppose that $d\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)>t \delta$ for some $t>1$. We define the width of $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ as $I C_{t-1}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)-I C_{t}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ and denote it by $W\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$. Note that this value is independent of $t$ and only depends on $w_{i}$ and $w_{j}$ and so, we can compute it in a constant time (in the unweighted case, the width of all pairs in $P$ are $\delta / 2$ ). Because here the widths of the pairs in $P$ might not be equal, we first need to find an interval $I^{*}$ such that each pair of vertices can generate at most one cost in $I^{*}$. But before going into that, we need to update our feasibility test to support weighted vertices. Algorithm 7 presents the feasibility test procedure WPATH-FT $(P, r)$ which gets a weighted path $P$ and a test value $r$ and determines whether $r \geq r^{*}$ or $r<r^{*}$.

```
Algorithm 7 WPATH-FT( \(P, r\) )
    Set Counter \(=1\)
    for \(\mathrm{j}=1\) to n do
        Let \(I_{j}=\left[\alpha_{j}, \beta_{j}\right]\) be the interval on the \(x\)-axis for which \(w d\left(\alpha_{j}, v_{j}\right)=w d\left(v_{j}, \beta_{j}\right)=\mathrm{r}\).
    end for
    Set NextInterval \(=(-\infty,+\infty)\).
    Set \(j=1\).
    if NextInterval \(\cap I_{j}=\emptyset\) then
        Put a center \(c\) at the rightmost point of NextInterval.
        Counter \(=\) Counter +1
        if Counter \(>k\) then
                return Infeasible.
        end if
        NextInterval \(=(c, c+\delta]\).
    else
        NextInterval \(=\) NextInterval \(\cap I_{j}\).
        \(j=j+1\).
    end if
    goto Line 7 if \(j \leq n\).
    return feasible.
```

Note that in the while loop of Algorithm 7, each $I_{j}(1 \leq j \leq n)$ can be computed in constant time and we visit each vertex once. Therefore, the running time of the above
feasibility test is $O(n+k)$. The geometric view for the weighted case is similar to the unweighted case but here, for each vertex $v_{i}$, the magnitude of the slopes of $R_{i}$ and $L_{i}$ is $w_{i}$. For each pair $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$, the $y$-coordinate of the intersection point of $R_{i}$ and $L_{j}$ is the cost that a fitted 1 -train (single point) in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$ induces on $v_{i}$ and $v_{j}$ which is denoted by $I C_{1}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$. Similarly, if $d\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)>(t-1) \delta, I C_{t}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ would be the $y$-coordinate of the horizontal segment with length $(t-1) \delta$ and endpoints on $R_{i}$ and $L_{j}$ (see Figure 4.6).


Figure 4.6: A weighted path $\left(v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}, v_{4}\right)$, the width of $\left(v_{2}, v_{4}\right)$ and three costs generated by the pair. Note that only one of them lies inside $I^{*}$.

### 4.3.1 Matrix Search for Weighted Paths

First, we need to build an interval $I_{1}=[a, b]$ such that $r^{*} \in I_{1}$ and it's interior does not contain any $I C_{1}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ for any $i<j$ (note that $I C_{1}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ is indeed the $y$-coordinate of the intersection point of $R_{i}$ and $L_{j}$ ). If we use Lemma 2.5 [66] on all $R_{i}$ and $L_{j}(1 \leq i, j \leq n)$, we can get $I_{1}$ in $O((n+k) \log n)$ time. Let us define $W^{*}$ as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
W^{*}=\min \left\{W\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right): i<j \text { and } I C_{1}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right) \geq b\right\} \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can see that $r^{*} \in I_{2}:=\left[b-k W^{*}, b\right] \cap I_{1}$. This is because $r^{*}$ can't be smaller than the cost that a fitted $k$-train induces on the generating pair of $W^{*}$.

Proposition 4.4. $W^{*}$ can be computed in $O(n \log n)$ time.
Proof. We first compute the intersection points of all $L_{i}$ and $R_{j}$ for $1 \leq i, j \leq n$ with the horizontal line $y=b$. Then, we sort these intersections on the line from left to right in $O(n \log n)$ time. So, each of these intersections corresponds to a line with a positive or a negative slope. We traverse these intersections from left to right and store the minimum positive slope and the minimum width we have seen in variables min_slope and min_width respectively. Finally, we set min_width as $W^{*}$. Specifically, when we visit an intersection point, if it came from a line with a positive slope, we update min_slope if necessary and if it came from a line with a negative slope, we compute the width it creates with the line that generated min_slope and update min_width if necessary.

We can see that the length of $I_{2}$ is at most $k W^{*}$. This implies that by applying the feasibility test $O(\log k)$ times at the costs $b-i W^{*}(0 \leq i \leq k)$ we get an interval $I_{3} \subseteq I_{2}$ with length at most $W^{*}$ containing $r^{*}$. Because $W^{*}$ is the minimum width, each pair $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ with $I C_{1}\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right) \geq b$ can generate at most one candidate value in $I_{3}$.

Consider the set of half-lines $\left\{R_{1}, \ldots, R_{n-1}\right\}$ (all with positive slopes) and their upperenvelope polygonal chain as a function $f_{U E}(x)$. We can see that $f_{U E}$ is a piece-wise linear and an increasing function. Also, $f_{U E}(x)$ is the cost of covering all the vertices on the left side of $x$ if we put a center at $x$. We can compute $f_{U E}$ in linear time as follows: suppose that we have already computed the upper-envelope of $\left\{R_{1}, \ldots, R_{j-1}\right\}$ consisting of it's lines and break points. Now, when we add $R_{j}$ and update our envelope, if $R_{j}$ is below the last break point, we consider $R_{j}$ and the last line of the envelope for a possible new break point. Otherwise, we find the first break point below the line (be checking the break points one by one from the last) and consider the line next to it (on its left) for a break point. Note that when we check a break point and it turns out it is below $R_{j}$, the line next to it (on its right) can never be a part of the envelope. Because we have linear number of lines, the time complexity of computing $f_{U E}$ is linear.

Let $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{s}\right)$ be the $x$-coordinates of the break points of $f_{U E}$ where $s$ is the number of break points. Then, we can use our feasibility test to do binary search on $\left\{f_{U E}\left(x_{i}\right): 1 \leq i \leq\right.$ $s\}$ to find an interval $\left[x_{q}, x_{q+1}\right]$ such that $r^{*} \in\left[f_{U E}\left(x_{q}\right), f_{U E}\left(x_{q+1}\right)\right]$. Let $R_{q}$ (generated by $\left.v_{q}\right)$ be the line corresponding to the portion of $f_{U E}$ in $\left[x_{q}, x_{q+1}\right]$. Then we have the following observation:

Observation 4.5. If $c_{1}^{*}$ induces $r^{*}$, then $v_{q}$ is the first vertex of a determining pair.
Based on the above observation, we can consider all pairs $\left\{\left(v_{q}, v_{q+1}\right), \ldots,\left(v_{q}, v_{n}\right)\right\}$, obtain the candidate value that each generates, sort them and do binary search (using our feasibility test) to get an interval $I^{(1)}$. Now, $c_{1}^{*}$ can't generate any candidate value in the interior of $I^{(1)}$. Similarly, we can do the above process on $\left\{L_{2}, \ldots, L_{n}\right\}$ to get an interval $I^{(2)}$ such that $c_{k}^{*}$ can't generate any candidate value in the interior of $I^{(2)}$. Let $I^{*}=I_{3} \cap I^{(1)} \cap I^{(2)}$. So, it is only left to resolve the candidates in the interior of $I^{*}$.

Observation 4.6. If $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ is a determining pair and a train $\left(c_{h_{1}}^{*}, \ldots, c_{h_{2}}^{*}\right)$ in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$ induces $r^{*}$ on the interior of $I^{*}$, then

1. $0<d\left(v_{i}, c_{h_{1}}^{*}\right), d\left(v_{j}, c_{h_{2}}^{*}\right)<\delta / 2$.
2. $\left(c_{h_{1}}^{*}, \ldots, c_{h_{2}}^{*}\right)$ is the longest train that can be fitted in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$.

The first part of the above observation comes from the fact that if $r^{*}$ lies on the interior of $I^{*}$, then $h_{1} \neq 1$ and $h_{2} \neq k$. So, if for example $d\left(v_{i}, c_{h_{1}}^{*}\right) \geq \delta / 2$ then because of the PCC,
$c_{h_{1}-1}^{*}$ can cover $v_{i}$ in the optimal solution. For the second part, note that if we are able to fit a longer train in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$ then either $d\left(v_{i}, c_{h_{1}}^{*}\right)$ or $d\left(v_{j}, c_{h_{2}}^{*}\right)$ is greater than $\delta / 2$ which contradicts the first part.

Based on Observation 4.6, for any pair of vertices $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$, we define our matrix $M$ for the weighted case such that $M[i, j]$ is the cost $r$ induced by the longest train $\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{q}\right)$ that can be fitted in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$ if $r \in I^{*}$ and $0<d\left(v_{i}, c_{1}\right), d\left(v_{j}, c_{q}\right)<\delta / 2$. If we didn't have either of these two conditions, we assign $M[i, j]=0$. It is clear that $r^{*}$ is an element of $M$. Similar to the unweighted case, we define $\bar{M}[i, j]$ as $\max \{M[i, i+1], \ldots, M[i, j]\}$. Again, we can see that $\bar{M}$ is a row sorted matrix but may not be sorted column-wise. Next, we show Proposition 4.3 is still valid for our new definition of $M$ and $\bar{M}$ in the weighted case.

Proposition 4.5. If $M[i, j]=r^{*}$, then for all $i<j^{\prime}<j, M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right] \leq r^{*}$.
Proof. We proceed by contradiction. Suppose that $\left(v_{i}, v_{j}\right)$ induces $r^{*}$ and $\exists i<j^{\prime}<j$ such that $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]>r^{*}$. Let $C=\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{q}\right)$ be the longest train that can be fitted in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right]$ and induces the cost $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]$ on $v_{i}$ and $v_{j^{\prime}}$. Also, let $C^{\prime}=\left(c_{h_{1}}^{*}, \ldots, c_{h_{2}}^{*}\right) \subseteq C^{*}$ be the train that induces $r^{*}$ in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}\right]$. Now, $c_{h_{1}+q-1}^{*}<c_{q}$ (because we assumed that $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]>r^{*}$ ) and $|C|<\left|C^{\prime}\right|$ (because $\left.v_{j}>v_{j^{\prime}}\right)$. We consider two cases:
case 1: $c_{h_{1}+q}^{*} \leq \boldsymbol{v}_{j^{\prime}}$ : In this case, we could fit a $(q+1)$-train namely $C^{\prime \prime}=\left(c_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, c_{q+1}^{\prime}\right)$ in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j}^{\prime}\right]$ which contradicts the fact that $C$ was the longest train in $\left[v_{i}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right]$.
case 2: $\boldsymbol{c}_{h_{1}+q}^{*}>\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{j}^{\prime}}$ : In this case, $v_{j^{\prime}}$ should be covered from its right in $C^{*}$ (because $c_{h_{1}+q-1}^{*}<c_{q}$ and we assumed $\left.M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]>r^{*}\right)$. Also, the cost of covering $v_{j^{\prime}}$ in $C^{*}$ is no more than $r^{*}$. So, if $w_{i} \leq w_{j^{\prime}}, d\left(v_{i}, c_{h_{1}}^{*}\right) \geq d\left(v_{j^{\prime}}, c_{h_{1}+q}^{*}\right)$ and thus, we can fit a $(q+1)$-train in [ $\left.v_{i}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right]$ which is a contradiction.

Now, assume that $w_{i}>w_{j^{\prime}}$. Let $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$ be the points on the right side of $v_{j^{\prime}}$ such that $w d\left(v_{j^{\prime}}, t_{1}\right)=r^{*}$ and $w d\left(v_{j^{\prime}}, t_{2}\right)=M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]$. Note that $t_{2}>t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$ is the mirror image of $c_{q}$ with respect to $v_{j^{\prime}}$. Now, $d\left(c_{h_{1}}^{*}, c_{1}\right)<d\left(t_{1}, t_{2}\right)$ (because $w_{i}>w_{j^{\prime}}$ and the cost that $v_{i}$ induces on $c_{h_{1}}^{*}$ and $c_{1}$ are $r^{*}$ and $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]$ respectively). Also, because $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right] \neq 0, d\left(c_{q}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right)<\delta / 2$ (based on the definition of $M$ ), $c_{q}+\delta>v_{j^{\prime}}+\delta / 2$ which implies that $\left[t_{1}, t_{2}\right] \subseteq\left[c_{h_{1}+q}^{*}, c_{q}+\delta\right]$. This contradicts the fact that $d\left(c_{h_{1}+q}^{*}, c_{q}+\delta\right)=d\left(c_{h_{1}}^{*}, c_{1}\right)<d\left(t_{1}, t_{2}\right)$ (see Figure 4.7).


Figure 4.7: Proof of Proposition 4.5

The above proposition implies that Observation 4.3 is valid for $M$ and $\bar{M}$ in the weighted case and so we can use Algorithm 6 to find $r^{*}$ and get $C^{*}$. Based on Algorithm 6, the time complexity of finding $r^{*}$ is $O((n g(n)+k) \log n)$ where $g(n)$ is the time complexity for computing an element of $\bar{M}$. In the last section of this chapter, we show how we can compute an element of $\bar{M}$ in $O\left(\log ^{3} n\right)$ time by spending $O\left(n \log ^{3} n\right)$ time for preprocessing. This gives us the following theorem:

Theorem 4.2. The PCkCP can be solved in $O\left(\left(n \log ^{3} n+k\right) \log n\right)$ time.

### 4.4 Computing an Element of $\bar{M}$ for Weighted Paths

In this section, we build a data structure such that for any query pair $(i, j)(i<j)$, it enables us to compute $\bar{M}[i, j]=\max \left\{M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]: i<j^{\prime} \leq j\right\}$ in a sub-linear time. Suppose that $I^{*}=\left[y_{0}, y_{1}\right]$. We denote the $x$-coordinates of the intersection points of $L_{i}$ and $R_{i}(1<i<n)$ with line $y=y_{1}$ by $l_{i}$ and $r_{i}$, respectively (see Figure 4.6). Note that if for a pair $\left(v_{i}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right)$, $l_{j^{\prime}}<r_{i}$, it can not generate any candidate value in $I^{*}$ (because of the way we built $I^{*}$ ) and so, $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]=0$. Thus, we only consider the pairs $\left(v_{i}, v_{j^{\prime}}\right)$ for which $l_{j^{\prime}} \geq r_{i}$. Let us define the complement function with respect to $\delta$ as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{comp}_{\delta}(x)=\left\lceil\frac{x}{\delta}\right\rceil \times \delta-x \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

We also denote $\operatorname{comp}_{\delta}\left(l_{i}\right)$ and $\operatorname{comp}_{\delta}\left(r_{i}\right)$ by $\hat{l}_{i}$ and $\hat{r}_{i}$ respectively where $1<i<n$. For any pair $\left(i, j^{\prime}\right)$ with $j^{\prime}>i$ and $l_{j^{\prime}}>r_{i}$, let $E_{i j^{\prime}}=\operatorname{comp}_{\delta}\left(l_{j^{\prime}}-r_{i}\right)=\operatorname{rem}_{\delta}\left(\hat{l}_{j^{\prime}}-\hat{r}_{i}\right)$ and $D_{i j^{\prime}}=E_{i j^{\prime}} /\left(w_{i}^{-1}+w_{j^{\prime}}^{-1}\right)\left(w_{i}\right.$ and $w_{j^{\prime}}$ are the magnitudes of the slopes of $R_{i}$ and $L_{j^{\prime}}$ respectively). Based on the geometric view, it is easy to see that $M\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]=y_{1}-D_{i j^{\prime}}$ if $D_{i j^{\prime}} \leq\left|I^{*}\right|$ and zero otherwise. So, the problem of finding $\bar{M}[i, j]$ is equivalent to find $D_{\text {min }}=\min \left\{D_{i j^{\prime}}: i<j^{\prime} \leq j\right\}$. It is convenient to visualize this set as follows: for each $i<j^{\prime} \leq j$, we consider $e_{i j^{\prime}}$ as the point located at $\left(E_{i j^{\prime}}, 0\right)$ on the $x$-axis. There are two half-lines corresponding to $e_{i j^{\prime}}$ :

1. $L_{i j^{\prime}}^{+}$attached to $e_{i j}$ with slope $w_{i}$.
2. $L_{i j^{\prime}}^{-}$from the origin with slope $-w_{j^{\prime}}$.

Figure 4.8 depicts an example of such half-lines. We can see that the distance between the intersection point of $L_{i j}^{+}$and $L_{i j}^{-}$from the $x$-axis is indeed $D_{i j}$. We call this distance the $D$ coordinate of the intersection (when a point moves downward, its $D$-coordinate increases). So, each value $E_{i j^{\prime}}$ generates exactly one intersection $D$-coordinate call it the $D$-value of $E_{i j^{\prime}}$. Like the unweighted case, we build a balanced binary tree $\mathcal{T}$ on top of the vertices and in each node $\nu \in \mathcal{T}$ we store $\left\{\hat{l}_{h}: v_{h} \in \operatorname{span}(\nu)\right\}$ as an increasingly sorted sequence $\sigma(\nu)$.


Figure 4.8: Three points $e_{i j_{1}}, e_{i j_{2}}$ and $e_{i j_{3}}$ located at distances $E_{i j_{1}}, E_{i j_{2}}$ and $E_{i j_{3}}$ respectively and their generating points. In this example, $\left(v_{i}, v_{j_{1}}\right)$ generates the maximum of $\left\{M\left[i, j_{1}\right], M\left[i, j_{2}\right], M\left[i, j_{3}\right]\right\}$.

So, if we preprocess each $\nu \in \mathcal{T}$ such that for a given vertex $v_{i}$, we can quickly compute

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu_{i}(\nu)=\min \left\{D-\text { value of } E_{i h}: v_{h} \in \operatorname{span}(\nu)\right\} \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

we can decompose the set $\left\{v_{j}: i<j^{\prime} \leq j\right\}$ into $\cup_{\nu \in \mathcal{V}_{i, j}} \operatorname{span}(\nu)$ (as we did in Section 2.1) and set $D_{\text {min }}=\min \left\{\mu_{i}(\nu): \nu \in \mathcal{V}_{i, j}\right\}$

Let $\nu \in \mathcal{T}$ be a fixed node. In the rest, we show how we can preprocess $\nu$ such that given a query vertex $v_{i}$, we can efficiently compute $\mu_{i}(\nu)$. First, note that the set of half-lines $\left\{L_{i h}^{-}: v_{h} \in \operatorname{span}(\nu)\right\}$ is independent of $i$. Also, for each $i,\left\{E_{i h}: v_{h} \in \operatorname{span}(\nu)\right\}$ is the union of two sorted sequences $\sigma_{i}^{1}(\nu)$ and $\sigma_{i}^{2}(\nu)$, where $\sigma_{i}^{1}(\nu)$ (resp. $\left.\sigma_{i}^{2}(\nu)\right)$ is obtained by a shift (adding a constant value) of the elements in $\sigma(\nu)$ smaller than (resp. greater than or equal to) $\hat{r}_{i}$. Therefore, if $\mu_{i}^{1}(\nu)$ (resp. $\left.\mu_{i}^{2}(\nu)\right)$ is the minimum $D$-value generated by $\sigma_{i}^{1}(\nu)$ (resp. $\sigma_{i}^{2}(\nu)$ ), we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu_{i}(\nu)=\min \left\{\mu_{i}^{1}(\nu), \mu_{i}^{2}(\nu)\right\} \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider the lines $L_{i j^{\prime}}^{+}: y=w_{i}\left(x-E_{i j^{\prime}}\right)$ and $L_{i j^{\prime}}^{-}: y=-w_{j^{\prime}} x$, where $E_{i j^{\prime}}$ is a variable (see Figure 4.8). When $E_{i j^{\prime}}$ increases, the $D$-value of $E_{i j^{\prime}}$ (the intersection of $L_{i j^{\prime}}^{+}$and $L_{i j^{\prime}}^{-}$) increases linearly. Specifically, if we set $E_{i j^{\prime}}(t)=\hat{l}_{j^{\prime}}+t$, the $D$-value generated by $E_{i j^{\prime}}$ is the following linear function denoted by $\mathfrak{L}_{i j^{\prime}}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathfrak{L}_{i j^{\prime}}(t)=\frac{w_{i} w_{j^{\prime}}}{w_{i}+w_{j^{\prime}}}\left(\hat{l}_{j^{\prime}}+t\right) \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us define:

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(t)=\min \left\{\mathfrak{L}_{i j^{\prime}}(t): v_{j^{\prime}} \in \operatorname{span}(\nu)\right\} \tag{4.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can see that $f(t)$ is the lower-envelope of a set of lines which can be computed in $O(|\nu| \log |\nu|)$ time $(|\nu|$ is the number of vertices in $\operatorname{span}(\nu))$ using the divide-and-conquer
algorithm (we use the order in $\sigma(\nu)$ for breaking the lines). Because we need to work with the sub-sequences of $\sigma(\nu)$, we store the entire recursion tree [63] (with the solutions of its sub-problems) of the divide-and-conquer algorithm and denote this tree by $\mathcal{R}_{i}$. So, each node $\omega$ of $\mathcal{R}_{i}$ contains a set of lines each corresponds to a vertex $\nu_{j^{\prime}} \in \operatorname{span}(\nu)$ and their lower-envelope. We denote the indices of these vertices by $\mathcal{J}(\omega)$. Note that the indices stored in each node of $\mathcal{R}_{i}$ is independent of $i$ (although the lines and the resulting lover-envelope depends on $i$. Also, we denote the lower-envelope stored in $\omega \in \mathcal{R}_{i}$ by $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{i}^{\omega}$ and the indices corresponds to the lines appeared in $\mathcal{L E}{ }_{i}^{\omega}$ from left to right by $\mathcal{E}_{i}^{\omega}$.

Based on the above discussion, one way to preprocess $\nu$ is that for each $1<i<n$, we compute and store $\mathcal{R}_{i}$. Now, when we are given a vertex $v_{i}$, we first use binary search to find the last element $s_{t_{0}}$ in $\sigma(\nu)=\left(s_{1}, \ldots, s_{t}\right)$ smaller than $\hat{r}_{i}$. So, we have two sub-sequences $\hat{\sigma}_{i}^{1}(\nu)=\left(s_{1}, \ldots, s_{t_{0}}\right)$ and $\hat{\sigma}_{i}^{2}(\nu)=\left(s_{t_{0}+1}, \ldots, s_{t}\right)$. Note that each $\mathcal{R}_{i}$ is a binary tree on top of $\operatorname{span}(\nu)$. So, we can decompose $\hat{\sigma}_{i}^{1}(\nu)$ (similarly $\left.\hat{\sigma}_{i}^{2}(\nu)\right)$ into the union

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{\sigma}_{i}^{1}(\nu)=\cup \hat{l}_{j}: j \in \mathcal{J}(\omega) \text { and } \omega \in \mathcal{W}^{1} \tag{4.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

for a set of nodes $\mathcal{W}^{1} \subseteq \mathcal{R}_{i}$. Indeed, the nodes in $\mathcal{W}^{1}$ can be specified by considering two root-leaf paths in $\mathcal{R}_{i}$ in $O(\log |\sigma(\nu)|)$ time. Now, $\sigma_{i}^{1}(\nu)$ is a shifted sequence of $\hat{\sigma}_{i}^{1}(\nu)$. Let us denote the amount of this shift by $x_{0}$. In order to find $\mu_{i}^{1}(\nu)$, for each node $\omega \in \mathcal{W}^{1}$ we look at the value of its lower-envelope at $x_{0}$. The minimum of these values is indeed $\mu_{i}^{1}(\nu)$. Similarly, we can obtain $\mu_{i}^{2}(\nu)$ and set the minimum of these two values $\mu_{i}(\nu)$. Because the height of $\mathcal{T}$ is $O(\log n)$, the total time complexity of computing $\bar{M}[i, j]$ is $O\left(\log ^{2} n\right)$.

The problem here is that if we build $\mathcal{R}_{i}$ for all $1<i<n$ and all $\nu \in \mathcal{T}$, the time complexity of the preprocessing phase is $O\left(n^{2} \log ^{2} n\right)$. In order to make the preprocessing cost sub-quadratic, we use the following sub-sequence property for each node $\omega$ (independent of $i$ ) in the recursion trees:

Proposition 4.6 (The sub-sequence property). For any $\omega \in \mathcal{R}_{i}$ and two indices $j_{1}$ and $j_{2}$ such that $w_{j_{1}}<w_{j_{2}}, \mathcal{E}_{j_{2}}^{\omega}$ is a sub-sequence of $\mathcal{E}_{j_{1}}^{\omega}$ where $w_{j_{1}}$ and $w_{j_{2}}$ are the weights of $v_{j_{1}}$ and $v_{j_{2}}$ respectively.

We prove the above proposition at the end of this section and here, we discuss how we use it to reduce the time complexity of the preprocessing phase and adjust the query time accordingly. First, we sort all the weights increasingly into a sequence $\left(w_{i_{1}}, \ldots, w_{i_{n}}\right)$. Next, we build a balanced binary tree $\mathbb{T}_{W}$ on top of this sequence as follows: the root $r_{W}$ of $\mathrm{T}_{W}$ corresponds to $w_{i_{n / 2}}$. Its left child corresponds to $w_{i_{n / 4}}$ and its right child corresponds to $w_{i_{3 n / 4}}$. We recursively continue building the nodes of the tree until each weight in the sequence has a node in $\mathbb{T}_{W}$. In the root of $\mathbb{T}_{W}$, we build and store $\mathcal{R}_{i_{n / 2}}$. Let $X_{1}=\mathcal{E}_{i_{n / 2}}$ (the result of building $\mathcal{R}_{i_{n / 2}}$ ) and $X_{2}=\left\{j: v_{j} \in \operatorname{span}(\nu)\right\} \backslash X_{1}$. In the right child of $r_{W}$, we build and store $\mathcal{R}_{i_{3 n / 4}}\left(X_{1}\right)$ and in the left child of $r_{W}$, we build and store $\mathcal{R}_{i_{n / 4}}\left(X_{2}\right)$ that is defined as follows: $\mathcal{R}_{i_{3 n / 4}}\left(X_{1}\right)$ (similarly $\mathcal{R}_{i_{n / 4}}\left(X_{2}\right)$ ) is the tree identical to $\mathcal{R}_{i}$ (all the
recursion trees when we process $\nu \in \mathcal{T}$ are identical but the information we store in each node is different) and a line in $\left\{\mathfrak{L}_{i_{3 n / 4} j^{\prime}}: j^{\prime} \in X_{1}\right\}$ is in $\omega \in \mathcal{R}_{i_{3 n / 4}}\left(X_{1}\right)$ if and only if it is in $\omega \in \mathcal{R}_{i_{n / 2}}$. We can easily see that the height of $\mathcal{R}_{i_{3 n / 4}}\left(X_{1}\right)$ is $O(\log |\nu|)$ and computes the lower-envelope of the lines in $X_{1}$ denoted by $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{i_{3 n / 4}}\left(X_{1}\right)$ in $O\left(\left|X_{1}\right| \log |\nu|\right)$ time. Similarly, $\mathcal{R}_{i_{n / 4}}\left(X_{2}\right)$ and $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{i_{n / 4}}\left(X_{2}\right)$ can be computed in $O\left(\left|X_{2}\right| \log |\nu|\right)$ time. We recursively build and store the recursion trees and lower-envelopes of the nodes in $\mathbb{T}_{W}$ based on the above partitioning of the lines (the lines that appear in the envelope and the lines that do not appear in the envelope) in each node.

We can see that in each level of $\mathrm{T}_{W}$, the set of lines in the recursion trees are disjoint and their sum is $|\nu|$. Because the height of $\mathbb{T}_{W}$ is $O(\log n)$, the total time complexity for building the recursion trees for all nodes in $\mathbb{T}_{W}$ is $O(|\nu| \log |\nu| \log n)$. Because the vertices in the span of the nodes in each level of $\mathcal{T}$ are disjoint, the total time complexity for building the recursion trees for all nodes in $\mathcal{T}$ becomes $O\left(n \log ^{3} n\right)$.

Here, we discuss given a query vertex $v_{i}$, how we can compute $\mu_{i}^{1}(v)$ in sub-quadratic time. First, we compute $\hat{\sigma}_{i}^{1}(\nu)$ and decompose it into its corresponding set of nodes $\mathcal{W}^{1}$ as in Equation 4.13. Next, we find a path $\tau_{i}$ from $r_{W}$ to $w_{i}$ in $\mathbb{T}_{W}$. Let $t_{L}$ and $t_{R}$ be the left and right child of $r_{W}$ respectively. We recall that we have stored $\mathcal{R}_{i_{n / 4}}\left(X_{2}\right)$ in $t_{L}$ and $\mathcal{R}_{i_{3 n / 4}}\left(X_{1}\right)$ in $t_{R}$. If $\tau_{i}$ goes to $t_{R}$, we do nothing in $r_{W}$ and go to $t_{R}$ (because $\mathcal{E}_{i}^{\omega}$ is a sub-sequence of $\mathcal{E}_{i_{n / 2}}^{\omega}$ according to Proposition 4.6). Otherwise, we process $r_{W}$ as follows: for each $\omega \in \mathcal{W}^{1}$, consider an intersection point $\mathfrak{L}_{i_{n / 2} j_{1}^{\prime}}$ and $\mathfrak{L}_{i_{n / 2} j_{2}^{\prime}}$ in $\mathcal{L E}_{\mathcal{E}_{n / 2}}^{\omega}$. Because $\mathcal{E}_{i_{n / 2}}^{\omega}$ is a sub-sequence of $\mathcal{E}_{i}^{\omega}$ (Proposition 4.6), by examining the $x$-coordinate of the intersection point of $\mathfrak{L}_{i j_{1}^{\prime}}$ and $\mathfrak{L}_{i j_{2}^{\prime}}$ against $x_{0}$, either $\left\{\mathfrak{L}_{i j^{\prime}}: j \in \mathcal{E}_{i_{n / 2}}^{\omega}\right.$ and $\left.j^{\prime} \leq j_{1}\right\}$ or $\left\{\mathfrak{L}_{i j^{\prime}}: j \in \mathcal{E}_{i_{n / 2}}^{\omega}\right.$ and $\left.j^{\prime} \geq j_{2}\right\}$ can not be the line in $\mathcal{L E} \mathcal{E}_{i}^{\omega}$ at point $x_{0}$. So, by doing binary search on the intersection points of $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{i_{n / 2}}^{\omega}$, we can get the line that might be the line in $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{i}^{\omega}$ at $x_{0}$. We store this line after processing $r_{W}$.

We continue processing the nodes of $\tau_{i}$ based on when each internal node in the path has a right or a left child and keep $O(\log |\nu|)$ (the size of $\mathcal{W}^{1}$ ) lines after processing each internal node in $\tau_{i}$. Finally, we pick the minimum value of these lines at $x_{0}$ and compare it with the values of the lower-envelope stored in $\left\{\mathcal{L E}_{i}^{\omega}: \omega \in \mathcal{W}^{1}\right\}$ at $x_{0}$ and pick the minimum one which is $\mu_{i}^{1}(\nu)$.

According to the above discussion, given a query vertex $v_{i}$, first, we need to decompose the vertices $\left\{v_{j^{\prime}}: i<j^{\prime} \leq j\right\}$ into the union the spans of the vertices in $\mathcal{V}_{i, j} \subseteq \mathcal{T}$. $\mathcal{V}_{i, j}$ has $O(\log n)$ vertices and can be computed in $O(\log n)$ time. Next, for each $\nu \in \mathcal{V}_{i, j}$, we need to compute and store its $\mathcal{W}^{1}$ which costs $O(\log |\nu|)$. Also, for each $\omega \in \mathcal{W}^{1}$, we have $\mathrm{T}_{W}$ which has $O(\log n)$ height and in each node of it we do binary search on the vertices of its lower-envelope. So, the query time complexity is $O\left(\log ^{4} n\right)$. If we look closely at this process, an improvement can be applied as follows: for a fixed $\nu$, consider three nodes $\omega_{p}$ and its children $\omega_{L}$ and $\omega_{R}$ in its recursion trees. Now, $\mathrm{T}_{W}$ is the same for all these nodes. Thus, for a node $\tau \in \mathbb{T}_{W}$ with corresponding weight $w_{t}, \mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{t}^{\omega_{p}}$ is obtained by merging $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{t}^{\omega_{L}}$
and $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{t}^{\omega_{R}}$. Note that because all the lines in the envelopes has positive slopes, $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{t}^{\omega_{L}}$ and $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{t}^{\omega_{R}}$ are increasing functions and intersect each other in at most one point. So, if we do binary search on the vertices of $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{t}^{\omega_{L}}$ and $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{t}^{\omega_{R}}$, when processing $\omega_{p}$ in $\tau$, we only need to test the intersection of $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{E}_{t}^{\omega_{L}}$ and $\mathcal{L E}_{t}^{\omega_{R}}$ against $x_{0}$. This removes an $O(\log n)$ factor from the query time complexity. So, we can have the following theorem:

Theorem 4.3. By spending $O\left(n \log ^{3} n\right)$ time for preprocessing, we can build a data structure that enables us to compute $\bar{M}[i, j]$ for any given pair $(i, j)$ in $O\left(\log ^{3} n\right)$ time.

### 4.4.1 Proving the Sub-sequence Property

Let $S$ be a sequence of points on the $x$-axis with $x$-coordinates $\left(\hat{x}_{1}, \ldots, \hat{x}_{g}\right)$ sorted increasingly such that $\forall j: 0<\hat{x}_{j}<\delta$ and $0<\beta<\pi / 2$ be a fixed given angle. Also, let $L_{S}^{-}=\left(\ell_{1}^{-}, \ldots, \ell_{g}^{-}\right)$be the sequence of half-lines from the origin with negative slopes such that $\ell_{j}^{-}$corresponds to $\hat{x}_{j}(1 \leq j \leq g)$. So, there is a correspondence between the points in $S$ and the half-lines in $L_{S}^{-}$(see Figure 4.8). Similarly, let $L_{S}^{+}=\left(\ell_{1}^{+}, \ldots, \ell_{g}^{+}\right)$be the sequence of half-lines where $\ell_{j}^{+}$starts from $\hat{x}_{j}$ and makes angle $\beta$ with the negative direction of the $x$-axis. Again, there is a correspondence between the half-lines in $L_{S}^{+}$and the points in $S$. Let us denote the intersection point of $\ell_{j}^{+}$and $\ell_{j}^{-}$by $\rho_{j}^{\beta}$. We call $\hat{x}_{j}$, the generating point of $\rho_{j}^{\beta}$. Finally, we consider $I_{S}^{\beta}=\left\{\rho_{1}^{\beta}, \ldots, \rho_{g}^{\beta}\right\}$ and denote the point in $I_{S}^{\beta}$ with minimum $D$-coordinate by $m_{S}^{\beta}$. In Figure 4.8, $S=\left(e_{i j_{1}}, e_{i j_{2}}, e_{i j_{3}}\right)$ and $m_{S}^{\beta}$ is generated by $e_{i j_{1}}$.

Consider the points in $S$ as a set of objects initially located at $\left(\hat{x}_{1}, \ldots, \hat{x}_{g}\right)$ such that each object can move forward and backward on the $x$-axis. Without any confusion we refer both the locations and moving objects by points based on the context. We can see that if we slide the points in $S$ to the left (resp. right), the points in $I_{S}^{\beta}$ moves downward (resp. upward). So, if we consider the $x$-axis as the time-axis, we can talk about the location of $S$ at time $t$ by which we mean the set of points obtained by shifting $S$ such that the $x$-coordinate of $\hat{x}_{1}$ becomes $t$. Let us denote the set of points in $S$, the intersection points in $I_{S}^{\beta}$ and the point in $I_{S}^{\beta}$ with minimum $D$-coordinate at time $t$ by $S(t), I_{S}^{\beta}(t)$ and $m_{S}^{\beta}(t)$ respectively. When $t$ varies from zero to $\delta$, the generating point of $m_{S}^{\beta}(t)$ might change. We call the times for which the generating point of $m_{S}^{\beta}(t)$ changes the event times and denote the sequence of generating points of $m_{S}^{\beta}(t)$ (in order of time) by $\epsilon_{\beta}(S)$. We can see that if we consider the $D$-coordinate of $\rho_{j}^{\beta}(t) 1 \leq j \leq g$ as a function of $t$, this function is linear (as in Equation 4.11) and so computing $\epsilon_{\beta}(S)$ is equivalent to computing the lower-envelope of a set of lines which can be done in $O(g \log g)$ time using the divide-and-conquer schema [63] (as we discussed in the previous subsection).

Let $\left(\ell_{i_{1}}^{-}, \ldots, \ell_{i_{g}}^{-}\right)$be $L_{S}^{-}$sorted decreasingly according to their slopes magnitudes. Also, let $\Pi_{S}^{\beta}=\left(p_{1}^{\beta}, \ldots, p_{g}^{\beta}\right)$ be the sequence of points generated by $S$ such that $p_{j}$ lies on $\ell_{i_{j}}^{-}$(and so, $\Pi_{S}^{\beta}(t)=\left(p_{1}^{\beta}(t), \ldots, p_{g}^{\beta}(t)\right)$ is the location of these points at time $t$ with respect to $\left.\beta\right)$. Let us denote the $D$-coordinate of $p_{j}^{\beta}(t)$ by $D\left(p_{j}^{\beta}(t)\right)$. Then,

Observation 4.7. If for two indices $1 \leq j_{1}<j_{2} \leq g, D\left(p_{j_{1}}^{\beta}(0)\right)>D\left(p_{j_{2}}^{\beta}(0)\right)$ then $\hat{x}_{i_{j_{1}}}$ can never appear on $\epsilon_{\beta}(S)$.

Therefore, if we repeatedly apply Observation 4.7 to remove the points in $S$ not appearing in $\epsilon_{\beta}(S)$, we would end up having a sequence $S^{(1)} \subseteq S$ such that $\epsilon_{\beta}(S)=\epsilon_{\beta}\left(S^{(1)}\right)$. We call this process the first round of pruning of the points in $S$. Note that the $D$-coordinates of the points in $\Pi_{S^{(1)}}^{\beta}(0)$ are sorted increasingly. Suppose that for two indices $j_{1}<j_{2}$, $D\left(p_{j_{1}}^{\beta}(0)\right)<D\left(p_{j_{2}}^{\beta}(0)\right)$, we define $t_{j_{1} j_{2}}^{\beta}$ as the time for which,

$$
\begin{equation*}
D\left(p_{j_{1}}^{\beta}\left(t_{j_{1} j_{2}}^{\beta}\right)\right)=D\left(p_{j_{2}}^{\beta}\left(t_{j_{1} j_{2}}^{\beta}\right)\right) \tag{4.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that because $\ell_{i_{j_{1}}}^{-}$has a greater slope magnitude than $\ell_{i_{j_{2}}}^{-}, t_{j_{1} j_{2}}^{\beta}$ exists.
Observation 4.8. If for three indices $j_{1}<j_{2}<j_{3}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
D\left(p_{j_{1}}^{\beta}(0)\right)<D\left(p_{j_{2}}^{\beta}(0)\right)<D\left(p_{j_{2}}^{\beta}(0)\right) \tag{4.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $D\left(p_{j_{1}}^{\beta}\left(t_{j_{2} j_{3}}^{\beta}\right)\right)<D\left(p_{j_{2}}^{\beta}\left(t_{j_{2} j_{3}}^{\beta}\right)\right)$ then $\hat{x}_{i_{j_{2}}}$ can never appear in $\epsilon_{\beta}(S)$.
Again if we repeatedly apply Observation 4.8 to the points in $S^{(1)}$ until no such triple found, we get a sequence $S^{(2)} \subseteq S^{(1)}$ such that $\epsilon_{\beta}(S)=\epsilon_{\beta}\left(S^{(2)}\right)$. Indeed, any point in $S^{(2)}$ should appear in $\epsilon_{\beta}(S)$ and the order is according to their corresponding points in $\Pi_{S}$. We call this process the second round of pruning of $S$. Based on the above discussion, obtaining $\epsilon_{\beta}(S)$ is equivalent to perform two rounds of pruning.

The sub-sequence property. For any two angles $0<\beta_{1}<\beta_{2}<\pi / 2, \epsilon_{\beta_{2}}(S)$ is a subsequence of $\epsilon_{\beta_{1}}(S)$.

Proof. We show that if a point $\hat{x}_{j_{j^{\prime}}} \in S$ is eliminated with respect to $\beta_{1}$, then it has to be eliminated with respect to $\beta_{2}$. We have two cases:

Case 1: $\hat{x}_{i_{j^{\prime}}}$ is eliminated in round one with respect to $\beta_{1}$. In this case, there is an index $j_{1}>j^{\prime}$ such that $D\left(p_{j_{1}}^{\beta_{1}}(0)\right)<D\left(p_{j^{\prime}}^{\beta_{1}}(0)\right)$. Now, because the magnitude of the slope of $\ell_{i_{j^{\prime}}}^{-}$is bigger than $\ell_{i_{j_{1}}}^{-}, D\left(p_{j_{1}}^{\beta_{2}}(0)\right)<D\left(p_{j^{\prime}}^{\beta_{2}}(0)\right)$ and so, $\hat{x}_{i_{j^{\prime}}}$ should be eliminated in the round one pruning with respect to $\beta_{2}$ (see Figure 4.9 as an example of such situation).


Figure 4.9: Proof of case 1.

Case 2: $\hat{x}_{i_{j^{\prime}}}$ is eliminated in round two with respect to $\beta_{1}$. So, there are two indices $j_{2}<j^{\prime}<j_{1}$ such that:

$$
\begin{equation*}
D\left(p_{j_{2}}^{\beta_{1}}(0)\right)<D\left(p_{j^{\prime}}^{\beta_{1}}(0)\right)<D\left(p_{j_{1}}^{\beta_{1}}(0)\right) \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

And,

$$
\begin{equation*}
D\left(p_{j_{2}}^{\beta_{1}}\left(t_{j^{\prime} j_{1}}^{\beta_{1}}\right)\right)<D\left(p_{j^{\prime}}^{\beta_{1}}\left(t_{j^{\prime} j_{1}}^{\beta_{1}}\right)\right)=D\left(p_{j_{1}}^{\beta_{1}}\left(t_{j^{\prime} j_{1}}^{\beta_{1}}\right)\right) \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\hat{x}_{i_{j^{\prime}}}$ is eliminated in round one with respect to $\beta_{2}$ we are done. Otherwise, we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
D\left(p_{j^{\prime}}^{\beta_{2}}(0)\right)<D\left(p_{j_{1}}^{\beta_{2}}(0)\right) \tag{4.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is easy to see $t_{j^{\prime} j_{1}}^{\beta_{2}}<t_{j^{\prime} j_{1}}^{\beta_{1}}$ and,

$$
\begin{equation*}
D\left(p_{j^{\prime}}^{\beta_{2}}\left(t_{j^{\prime} j_{1}}^{\beta_{2}}\right)\right)=D\left(p_{j_{1}}^{\beta_{2}}\left(t_{j^{\prime} j_{1}}^{\beta_{2}}\right)\right)=D\left(p_{j^{\prime}}^{\beta_{1}}\left(t_{j^{\prime} j_{1}}^{\beta_{1}}\right)\right) \tag{4.19}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 4.10: Proof of case 2.

This implies that $D\left(p_{j_{2}}^{\beta_{2}}\left(t_{j^{\prime} j_{1}}^{\beta_{2}}\right)\right)<D\left(p_{j_{2}}^{\beta_{1}}\left(t_{j^{\prime} j_{1}}^{\beta_{1}}\right)\right)$ which means that $\hat{x}_{i^{\prime}}$ should be eliminated with respect to $\beta_{2}$ (see Figure 4.10).

## Chapter 5

## An Efficient Algorithm for the Proximity Connected 2-Center Problem

Given a set $P$ of $n$ points in the plane, the $k$-center problem is to find $k$ congruent disks of minimum possible radius such that their union covers all the points in $P$. The 2-center problem is a special case of the $k$-center problem that has been extensively studied in the recent past $[22,59,65]$. In this chapter ${ }^{1}$, we consider a generalized version of the 2-center problem called proximity connected 2 -center problem (PCTCP). In this problem, we are also given a parameter $\delta \geq 0$ and we have the additional constraint that the distance between the centers of the disks should be at most $\delta$. Note that when $\delta=0$, the PCTCP is reduced to the 1 -center (minimum enclosing disk) problem and when $\delta$ tends to infinity, it is reduced to the 2-center problem. The PCTCP first appeared in the context of wireless networks in 1992 [36], but obtaining a nontrivial deterministic algorithm for the problem remained open. In this chapter, we resolve this open problem by providing a deterministic $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$ time algorithm for the problem.

[^2]
### 5.1 Background and Previous Works

The $k$-center problem in the plane is a fundamental facility-location problem in which we are given a set of $n$ demand points $\mathbb{P}$ and we are going to find a set $S$ of $k$ center points such that $\operatorname{cost}(S)$ defined as $\max _{p \in \mathbb{P}} \min _{s \in S} d(p, s)$ is minimized $(d(p, s)$ is the Euclidean distance between $p$ and $s$ ). The $k$-center problem is known to be NP-hard [3]. However, there is a simple greedy 2-approximation algorithm for the problem which can not be improved unless $P=N P[3]$. So, the studies on the problem went in the direction of obtaining polynomial time algorithms where $k$ is not considered as a part of the problem input. As an example, in 2002, Agarwal and Procopiuc [1] gave a $n^{O(\sqrt{k})}$ time algorithm to solve the $k$-center problem. Solving the problem for specific values of $k$ like $k=1$ and $k=2$ received attention due to the geometric properties that can be applied to solve these problems efficiently. The 1-center problem is indeed equivalent to the problem of covering $P$ with a disk with minimum area. This problem is also called the minimum enclosing disk (MED) problem. In 1983, Megiddo [51] used the prune and search technique to give an optimal linear time algorithm to solve the MED problem.

For $k=2$, Drenzer [25] gave the first nontrivial algorithm for the problem with $O\left(n^{3}\right)$ time complexity. Later in 1994, Agarwal and Sharir [2] improved the time complexity for the problem to $O\left(n^{2} \log ^{3} n\right)$. In 1996, Eppstein [27] gave a randomized algorithm for the problem with $O\left(n \log ^{2} n\right)$ expected running time. In 1997, Katz and Sharir [43] proposed the novel expander-based parametric search technique and showed that applying it to the 2-center problem using the $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ time feasibility test of Hershberger [33], gives an $O\left(n^{2} \log ^{3} n\right)$ time algorithm for the problem. Later in the year, Sharir [59] designed an $O\left(n \log ^{3} n\right)$ time algorithm for the decision version of the 2-center problem using the breakthrough observation of breaking the problem into three separate cases (far distant, distant and nearby cases). Next, he parallelized the decision algorithm and put it into the Megiddo's parametric search schema [52] to obtain an $O\left(n \log ^{9} n\right)$ time algorithm. Soon, it turned out that solving the problem in the nearby case is the bottleneck to reduce the time complexity. Later, Sharir's running time was improved by Chan [17] and Wang [65] to $O\left(n \log ^{2} n \log ^{2} \log n\right)$ and $O\left(n \log ^{2} n\right)$ respectively. Very recently, Choi and Ahn [22] (independently Cho and Oh [21]) obtained an $O(n \log n)$ time algorithm for the nearby case which led to an optimal $O(n \log n)$ time algorithm for the 2-center problem.

Note that in the PCkCP in the plane, when $\delta$ tends to zero (resp. infinity), the problem reduces to the 1 -center (resp. $k$-center) problem. Also, when $\delta$ tends to zero and $k$ tends to infinity the problem becomes the Euclidean Steiner tree problem (connecting the points of $P$ by lines of minimum total length in such a way that any two points can be connected by the lines). This is because in this configuration, the centers should be placed along the lines of the minimum Steiner tree in order to minimize the cost. The Euclidean Steiner tree problem is also NP-hard but it has a PTAS approximation algorithm [6].

In practice, the parameter $\delta$ usually specifies the range for which one center can communicate with other centers. So, when $S$ satisfies the PCC, any pair of centers can communicate with each other via the other centers. The proximity connected 2-center (PCTC) problem first emerged in the works of Huang [36] in 1992 while he was studying packet radio networks. In the network terminology, the PCTCP is the problem of locating two wireless devices as close as possible to the demand points $P$ such that they can send/receive messages between each other. He originally gave an $O\left(n^{5}\right)$ time algorithm for the 2-center problem having proximity constraints between their centers. Later in 2003, Huang et al. [38] studied a very close problem to the PCTCP called $\alpha$-connected 2 -center problem. In this problem, instead of $\delta$, a parameter $0 \leq \alpha \leq 1$ is given and the distance between the center of the disks should be at most $2(1-\alpha) r$ where $r$ is the radius of the disks. They gave an $O\left(n^{2} \log ^{2} n\right)$ time algorithm for the decision version (given an $r$ whether it is possible to cover the points with two disks of radius $r$ satisfying the desired conditions) of the problem. Note that this problem is a special case of the PCTC decision problem where $\delta=2(1-\alpha) r$. Later in 2006, they gave a randomized algorithm with the same $O\left(n^{2} \log ^{2} n\right)$ expected running time to solve the $\alpha$-connected 2 -center problem [37]. In this chapter, we consider the PCTCP and propose a deterministic $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$ time algorithm for it.

Here, we need to mention that although we use Sharir's observation [59] of breaking the problem into three different cases (far distant, distant and nearby), the reason we can't get a sub-quadratic algorithm like $[59,17,65,22]$ is that the PCTCP is structurally different from the 2 -center problem. In the 2-center problem, the optimal cost is determined by at most three points of $P$ [59] while in the PCTCP the cost may need to be determined by more than three points (because of the PCC). This means that our search space has a higher dimension than the search space of the 2 -center problem. Also, all the sub-quadratic algorithms for the 2-center problem use Megiddo's [52] or Cole's [23] parametric search schema to reduce the time complexity which makes the resulting algorithm impractical [2] while our algorithm exploits the geometric properties of the problem which make it straightforward to be implemented using standard data structures in computational geometry.

A solution for a given PCTCP instance is defined as a pair of disks whose centers satisfy the PCC and their union covers $P$. We call a disk with the larger (or equal) radius the determining disk of the solution and its radius the cost of the solution. An optimal solution is a solution with minimum cost among the set of all solutions for the problem. Note that there might be an infinite number of optimal solutions with different pairs of radii because we have freedom on the smaller disk. So, we try to find an optimal solution such that the radius of its smaller disk is minimum among all optimal solutions. We call such a solution a best optimal solution $(B O S)$ for the problem. Therefore, if the problem has more than one BOS, they would have the same pair of radii. We can also compare two solutions $S_{1}$ and $S_{2}$ as follows: we say that $S_{1}$ is a better solution than $S_{2}$ if $\operatorname{cost}\left(S_{1}\right)<\operatorname{cost}\left(S_{2}\right)$ and if $\operatorname{cost}\left(S_{1}\right)=\operatorname{cost}\left(S_{2}\right)$, the radius of the non-determining disk of $S_{1}$ is smaller than the
radius of the non-determining disk of $S_{2}$. In this chapter, our algorithm not only gives us an optimal solution but it computes a BOS for the problem.

### 5.2 Preliminaries and Definitions

Let $(P, \delta)$ be the given PCTCP instance where $P$ is a set of $n$ demand points in the plane and $\delta$ is a given non-negative number. We assume that the points are in general position, by which we mean no four points of $P$ lie on a circle. Let $\left(P_{1}, P_{2}\right)$ be a partition of $P$ obtained by dividing the plane by a line or two half-lines from a point (henceforth, when we use the term partition of the plane, we mean a partition that satisfies this condition). We say that a pair of disks $\left(D_{1}, D_{2}\right)$ with centers $\left(c_{1}, c_{2}\right)$ respectively is a solution for the partition if $D_{1}$ covers $P_{1}, D_{2}$ covers $P_{2}$ and $d\left(c_{1}, c_{2}\right) \leq \delta$. Optimal and best optimal solutions (BOSs) for the partition are defined similarly. Let $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$ be a BOS for the partition with centers $\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)$ respectively. We say that a point $p \in P_{1}$ is a dominating point of $D_{1}^{*}$ if $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$ is not a BOS for the partition ( $P_{1} \backslash p, P_{2}$ ). The dominating points of $D_{2}^{*}$ are defined similarly. Note that the dominating points of $D_{1}^{*}$ and $D_{2}^{*}$ are on their boundaries. By assuming that the points are in general position, if $D_{1}^{*}\left(\right.$ resp. $\left.D_{2}^{*}\right)$ is the MED of $P_{1}$ (resp. $P_{2}$ ), its dominating points are either three points on the boundary such that their induced triangle contains $c_{1}^{*}$ (resp. $c_{2}^{*}$ ) or two points on the boundary such that their connecting segment passes through $c_{1}^{*}$ (resp. $c_{2}^{*}$ ). In order to simplify the presentation of our algorithm, in the latter case, we consider one of the dominating points as two infinitely close points and so, if $D_{1}^{*}$ or $D_{2}^{*}$ is the MED of their corresponding points, we assume that it has exactly three dominating points. Similarly, if $D_{1}^{*}\left(\right.$ resp. $\left.D_{2}^{*}\right)$ is not the MED of $P_{1}$ (resp. $P_{2}$ ), in the case that it only has one dominating point, we can consider it as two infinitely close points. But, if it has three points on its boundary such that their induced triangle does not contain $c_{1}^{*}$, we might have no dominating point for $D_{1}^{*}$. We can assume that such a situation never happens by slightly perturbing the points. So, henceforth, if $D_{1}^{*}$ (resp. $D_{2}^{*}$ ) is not a MED, we assume that it has exactly two dominating points.

We call the problem of computing a BOS for a given partition $\left(P_{1}, P_{2}\right)$ the restricted $P C T C P$. In the next section, we show that how we can solve the restricted PCTC using the intersection hulls and the farthest-point Voronoi diagrams of $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$ (the intersection hull of a set of points with respect to some radius $r$ is defined as the intersection of all disks of radius $r$ around the points of the set). Before explaining our algorithm, we review farthest-point Voronoi diagrams, intersection hulls and their properties.

### 5.3 A Review on Farthest-point Voronoi Diagrams and their Properties.

For a given set of points $A=\left\{a_{i}: 1 \leq i \leq m\right\}$, the farthest-point Voronoi diagram of $A$ denoted by $\mathcal{F}(A)$ is the partition of the plane into a set of disjoint-interior cells $\left\{C\left(a_{i}\right): a_{i} \in A\right\}$ such that $C\left(a_{i}\right)$ is the set of points in the plane for which no point of $A$ is farther from them than $a_{i}$. We say $a_{i}$ is the farthest point of $C\left(a_{i}\right)$ and call it the site of the cell $C\left(a_{i}\right)$. For each point $x \in C\left(a_{i}\right)$, the weight of $x$ is defined as its distance to $a_{i}$ and we denote it by $w(x)$. Note that $\operatorname{disk}(x, w(x))$ (the disk with center $x$ and radius $w(x))$ covers all the points in $A$. It is easy to see that $\partial \mathcal{F}(A)$ (the set of boundaries between cells of $\mathcal{F}(A))$ consists of a set of line segments, half-lines, or it is just a line which we call the edges of $\partial \mathcal{F}(A)$. For each $e \in \partial \mathcal{F}(A)$, there exists a unique pair $\left(a_{i}, a_{j}\right)$ of points in $A$ such that for any point $x$ on the interior of $e$, we have $d\left(x, a_{i}\right)=d\left(x, a_{j}\right)$ and no point of $A$ is farther than these points from $x$. We call $a_{i}$ and $a_{j}$ the generators of $e$. Note that $e$ lies on the perpendicular bisector of the $\operatorname{seg}\left(a_{i} a_{j}\right)$ (the line segment connecting $a_{i}$ and $\left.a_{j}\right)$. If $v$ is an endpoint of $e$ (in this case we call $v$ a vertex), $v$ has three points in $A$ all farthest from $v$ (and no more because of our assumption that no four points are on a circle). We also call these points the generators of $v$. Given a start and an endpoint on $\partial \mathcal{F}(A)$, its corresponding path on $\partial \mathcal{F}(A)$ is the portion of $\partial \mathcal{F}(A)$ between two points directed from the start point toward the endpoint. Note that such a path is unique otherwise a cell of the $\mathcal{F}(A)$ would be bounded which is not possible [63].

Observation 5.1. The center of the minimum enclosing disk of $A$ is the minimum weight point on $\partial \mathcal{F}(A)$.

We call the center of the minimum enclosing disk of $A$ the root of $\partial \mathcal{F}(A)$ and it is unique.

Proposition 5.1. Let $p=[r, b]$ be a path on $\partial \mathcal{F}(A)$ where $r$ is its root. Then, the weight of the points on $p$ change monotonically increasing from $r$ to $b$.

Proof. First, note that the root is unique. So, for each edge $e$ in the path with generators $a_{i}$ and $a_{j}$, the midpoint of $\operatorname{seg}\left(a_{i} a_{j}\right)$ can not lie on the interior of $e$. On the other hand, $e$ is a subset of the perpendicular bisector of $\operatorname{seg}\left(a_{i} a_{j}\right)$ and the weight of each point on $e$ is its distance to $a_{i}$ (which is the same as its distance to $a_{j}$ ). So, the weight on $e$ should change monotonically as we move from one of its endpoints to another. Now, suppose that the proposition is not true. Then, there must be a first edge $h t$ (direction is along $p$ ) on the path such that as we move from $h$ to $t$, the weight decreases. This means that the vertex $h$ should have local maximum weight on the path which is contradiction because if we slightly move from $h$, the distance with one of its generators is increased.

The intersection hull of $A$ at radius $r$ is defined as $\cap_{a \in A} \operatorname{disk}(a, r)$. Let us denote the intersection hull of $A$ at radius $r$ by $H_{A}(r)$. We can easily see that $H_{A}(r)$ is composed of a set of circle arcs with radius $r$ with endpoints at the edges of $\partial \mathcal{F}(A)$. So, if we start from the leftmost endpoint of $H(r)$ and traverse its arcs clockwise, we obtain a unique sequence of arcs. We refer to this sequence as the arc-sequence of $H_{A}(r)$ and denote it by $\operatorname{Seq}(H(r))$. Let $x$ be a vertex of $H_{A}(r)$. Suppose that $x$ lies on an edge $e$ of $\mathcal{F}(A)$. We call the half-line from $x$ along $e$ that does not intersect the interior of $H_{A}(r)$ the arm of $H_{A}(r)$ from $x$. See Firgure 5.1.


Figure 5.1: The farthest-point Voronoi diagram of a set of points and its intersection hull at some radius $r$.

### 5.4 Computing a BOS for a Partition

Let $\left(P_{1}, P_{2}\right)$ be a given partition. First, we compute the minimum enclosing disks $D_{1}^{* *}$ and $D_{2}^{* *}$ for $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$ respectively. This can be done in linear time due to Megiddo's algorithm [51]. Also let $c_{1}^{* *}$ and $c_{2}^{* *}$ be the centers of $D_{1}^{* *}$ and $D_{2}^{* *}$ respectively. Now, if $d\left(c_{1}^{* *}, c_{2}^{* *}\right)$ (the distance between $c_{1}^{* *}$ and $\left.c_{2}^{* *}\right)$ is at most $D$, then we are done and $\left(D_{1}^{* *}, D_{2}^{* *}\right)$ is a BOS for the partition. Otherwise, we have the following proposition:

Proposition 5.2. If $d\left(c_{1}^{* *}, c_{2}^{* *}\right)>\delta$ then for any $B O S\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$ for the partition, we have $d\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)=\delta$.

Proof. We proceed by contradiction. Suppose that for an optimal solution ( $D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}$ ), $d\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)<\delta$. So, at least one of the centers for example $c_{1}^{*}$ is different from $c_{1}^{* *}$ and lies inside the region between the two perpendicular lines from $c_{1}^{* *}$ and $c_{2}^{* *}$ on $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{1}^{* *}, c_{2}^{* *}\right)$ (the line passing $c_{1}^{* *}$ and $\left.c_{2}^{* *}\right)$. This is because if both $c_{1}^{*}$ and $c_{2}^{*}$ are outside this region, the distance between them can't be less than $\delta$. If $c_{1}^{*}$ is not on $\partial \mathcal{F}\left(P_{1}\right)$, then we can slightly move $c_{1}^{*}$ toward its farthest point, reducing the radius of $D_{1}^{*}$ while not violating the PCC which contradicts best optimality. If $c_{1}^{*}$ is on $\partial \mathcal{F}\left(P_{1}\right)$, by Proposition 5.1, any point on the
interior of the path from $c_{1}^{* *}$ to $c_{1}^{*}$ on $\partial \mathcal{F}\left(P_{1}\right)$, covers $P_{1}$ with radius smaller than $r\left(D_{1}^{*}\right)$. Since $d\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)<\delta$, any point on this path sufficiently close to $c_{1}^{*}$ will not violate the PCC. This contradicts the fact that $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$ is a BOS.

Let $H_{1}(r)$ and $H_{2}(r)$ be the intersection hulls of $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$ with radius $r$. Note that the smallest radii for which the intersection hulls of $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$ are nonempty are $r\left(D_{1}^{* *}\right)$ and $r\left(D_{2}^{* *}\right)$ respectively. Let us denote them by $r_{1}^{0}$ and $r_{2}^{0}$ (in fact $H_{1}\left(r_{1}^{0}\right)=c_{1}^{* *}$ and $H_{2}\left(r_{2}^{0}\right)=c_{2}^{* *}$ ). If $r \geq r_{1}^{0}$, for any point $q \in H_{1}(r), \operatorname{disk}(q, r)$ (the disk with center $q$ and radius $r$ ) covers $P_{1}$ (we have a similar statement for $P_{2}$ and $r_{2}^{0}$ ). Based on this property, the problem turns to find a best optimal pair of radii $\left(r_{1}^{*}, r_{2}^{*}\right)$ (the bigger radius is minimum and the smaller radius is minimum among all such pairs) such that the distance between $H_{1}\left(r_{1}^{*}\right)$ and $H_{2}\left(r_{2}^{*}\right)$ is exactly $\delta$. Also, we call the maximum radius of optimal pair(s) the optimal cost and denote it by $r^{*}$. The idea to find a best optimal pair is first try to find the optimal cost $r^{*}$ and then, fix one of the intersection hulls at radius $r^{*}$ and find minimum possible radius for the other hull. So here, we focus on finding the optimal cost.

In order to find the optimal cost, we impose the constraint that the disks are congruent (radii of both hulls is equal). Imposing this constraint makes the problem easier while it does not change the optimal cost. In order to solve the problem for congruent disks, we can grow the intersection hulls of the points at each part of the partition to see when the distance between them becomes $\delta$. We first build $\mathcal{F}\left(P_{1}\right)$ and $\mathcal{F}\left(P_{2}\right)$ which can be done in $O(n \log n)$ time. In order to prevent structural changes when we grow the intersection hulls, we apply a binary search (repeatedly find the median and discard half of the values) on the set of weights of the farthest-point Voronoi diagrams of both sides to obtain an interval $I^{*}=\left(i_{0}, i_{1}\right)$ such that $r^{*} \in I^{*}$ and for each vertex $v$ of the diagrams, $w(v) \notin I^{*}$ (the weight of a point $x$ in a cell of farthest-point Voronoi diagram denoted by $w(x)$ is the distance between $x$ and the site of the cell containing it). At each step of the binary search, when we test a weight $w$, we use the algorithm of [20] to compute the distance between the two intersection hulls at radius $w$ to see whether their distance is smaller, equal or greater than $\delta$. Note that because the intersection hulls are convex, this step can be done in $O(\log n)$ time according to [20] (we don't need to explicitely build the intersection hulls because their vertices are along the edges of the farthest-point Voronoi diagrams).

Observation 5.2. For any index $i$ and any $r \in I^{*}$, the endpoints of the $i^{\text {th }}$-element of $\operatorname{Seq}\left(H_{1}(r)\right)$ and $\operatorname{Seq}\left(H_{1}\left(i_{0}\right)\right)$ (resp. Seq $\left(H_{2}(r)\right)$ and Seq $\left(H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)\right)$ ) lie on same arms of $H_{1}\left(i_{0}\right)$ (resp. $H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$ ).

In other words, when $r$ varies from $i_{0}$ to $i_{1}$, no arc in intersection hulls will be emerged or vanished. Let us denote the arms of $H_{1}\left(i_{0}\right)$ by $A_{1}$ and call the partition induced by $H_{1}\left(i_{0}\right) \cup A_{1}$ the $A_{1}$-partition of the plane. Now, we discuss how to find the optimal cost for the partition. Suppose that we have not found $r^{*}$ during the binary search (otherwise we are


Figure 5.2: A mini-arc for two intersection hulls
done). So, $d\left(H_{1}\left(i_{0}\right), H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)\right)>\delta$ and $d\left(H_{1}\left(i_{1}\right), H_{2}\left(i_{1}\right)\right)<\delta$. Let $\operatorname{Seq}\left(H_{1}\left(i_{0}\right)\right)=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{u}\right)$ and $\operatorname{Seq}\left(H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)\right)=\left(Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{u^{\prime}}\right)$. We also label each region of the $A_{1}$-partition bounded by two neighbour arms by the name of the arc it contains. Each arm in $A_{1}$ can intersect $\partial H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$ in at most two points. Consider an arm in $A_{1}$ with endpoint $a$ and an intersection point $x$ with $\partial H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$. We call this intersection point a first intersection point if $a x$ does not intersect the interior of $\mathrm{H}_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$.

Let $B$ be the set of all first intersection points of the arms in $A_{1}$ and $\partial H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$. Note that $H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$ is convex and the arms around $H_{1}\left(i_{0}\right)$ diverges from each other. Also, we already have the order of the arms around $H_{1}\left(i_{0}\right)$ induced by $\mathcal{F}\left(P_{1}\right)$. In order to compute $B$, consider the counter-clockwise order on the arms of $A_{1}$ starting from the arm with the lowest slope (can be negative) and compute their first intersection points with $H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$ in order. An important point here is that if a vertex of $H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$ lies on the right side of an arm $\vec{a}$ (the direction is from its endpoint), it will be on the right side of any arm after $\vec{a}$. This property implies that the cost of computing $B$ is linear (see Figure 5.2).

Now, consider the partition induced by $B$ and the vertices of $\partial H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$ on $\partial H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$. We call each region of this partition a mini-arc on $\partial H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$ (see Figure 5.2). We assign a label $\left(X_{i}, Y_{j}\right)$ to each mini-arc of $\partial H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$ where $X_{i}$ is the label of the mini-arc in the $A_{1}$-partition and $Y_{j}$ is the label the arc of $H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$ containing the mini-arc. Note that the number of such $\left(X_{i}, Y_{j}\right)$ labels are linear (because we have a linear number of mini-arcs).

Proposition 5.3. The labels of the two arcs containing two closest points between $H_{1}\left(r^{*}\right)$ and $H_{2}\left(r^{*}\right)$ corresponds to the label of one of the mini-arcs.

Proof. Let $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ be two points on $H_{1}\left(r^{*}\right)$ and $H_{2}\left(r^{*}\right)$ respectively with distance $\delta$. First, we observe that the perpendicular lines on $\operatorname{line}\left(p_{1}, p_{2}\right)$ from $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ should not intersect the interior of $H_{1}\left(r^{*}\right)$ and $H_{2}\left(r^{*}\right)$ (otherwise it contradicts the optimallity of $r^{*}$ ). Suppose that $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ are lie on two arcs $X_{i}$ and $Y_{j}$ respectively (we consider the names of the arcs in $H_{1}\left(r^{*}\right)$ and $H_{2}\left(r^{*}\right)$ the same as the label of their corresponding regions in


Figure 5.3: A connecting line segment of two points from two arcs that do not make a mini-arc intersects an arm.
$H_{1}\left(i_{0}\right)$ and $H_{2}\left(i_{0}\right)$ respectively $)$. If $\left(X_{i}, Y_{j}\right)$ is not a label of a mini-arc, $p_{1} p_{2}$ should intersect an arm of $X_{i}$. But in this situation, the perpendicular line on $\operatorname{line}\left(p_{1}, p_{2}\right)$ from $p_{1}$ should intersect the interior of $H_{1}\left(r^{*}\right)$ (because of convexity of $H_{1}\left(r^{*}\right)$ ) which is contradiction. See Figure 5.3.

According to Proposition 5.3, we can compute $r^{*}$ as follows: we consider each label $\left(X_{i}, Y_{j}\right)$ of the mini-arcs and compute the value $r_{i, j}$ for which the distance between the two $\operatorname{arcs} X_{i}$ and $Y_{j}$ becomes $\delta$ as they propagate between their bounding arms. Note that computing each $r_{i, j}$ can be done in a constant time. Now, $r^{*}$ is the minimum value among all $r_{i, j} s$.

The next step is obtaining a BOS for the partition after computing $r^{*}$. As we said earlier, in order to do this, we first assume that the determining disk covers $P_{1}$ and obtain the minimum possible radius $r_{1}^{\prime}$ for $H_{2}$ which makes the distance between $H_{1}\left(r^{*}\right)$ and $H_{2}\left(r_{1}^{\prime}\right)$ exactly $\delta$. This can be done in a similar way to how we obtained $r^{*}$. Then we obtain $r_{2}^{\prime}$ similarly by assuming that the determining disk covers $P_{2}$. By comparing the results, we pick the one with smaller non-determining disk which is in fact a BOS for the partition. So, the total time we need to compute a BOS is $O(n \log n)$.

### 5.5 Obtaining a BOS for the PCTCP

We denote the optimal cost for the PCTCP by $r^{*}$ and a BOS for the problem by $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$ with centers $\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)$ respectively. We can assume that $c_{1}^{*}$ and $c_{2}^{*}$ lie on the $x$-axis and $c_{1}^{*}$ is on the left side of $c_{2}^{*}$. In [59], Sharir broke the 2 -center decision problem (given a parameter $r$ determine whether it is possible to cover the points with two disks of radius $r$ ) into three cases -far distant, distant and nearby- with respect to the given parameter $r$. He showed that providing separate algorithms for these cases will reduce the overall time complexity to solve the decision problem. Although our problem is an optimization problem and the parameter $r^{*}$ is unknown, we will show that breaking the PCTCP into the same cases will
simplify our algorithm and reduce the overall time complexity. So, our algorithm separately considers each of the following three assumptions about $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$.

1. Nearby: $d\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right) \leq r^{*}$.
2. Distant: $r^{*}<d\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right) \leq 3 r^{*}$.
3. Far distant: $d\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)>3 r^{*}$.

Denote the smallest cost we can get having the nearby, distant and far distant assumptions by $r^{N A}, r^{D A}$ and $r^{F A}$ respectively. We also use the same notation for a BOS and their corresponding centers having each assumption. So, we can obtain ( $D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}$ ) by comparing $\left(D_{1}^{N A}, D_{2}^{N A}\right),\left(D_{1}^{D A}, D_{2}^{D A}\right)$ and $\left(D_{1}^{F A}, D_{2}^{F A}\right)$ (note that these solutions may not exist or satisfy their corresponding case conditions. For example, $d\left(c_{1}^{N A}, c_{2}^{N A}\right)$ might be greater than $r^{N A}$ but if $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$ satisfies the nearby case, then $r^{N A}=r^{*}$ and $\left(D_{1}^{N A}, D_{2}^{N A}\right)$ would be a BOS for the problem and we have $\left.d\left(c_{1}^{N A}, c_{2}^{N A}\right) \leq r^{N A}=r^{*}\right)$. Henceforth, while studing each of the cases, when we say BOS, we mean a best solution we can get having the corresponding case assumption. Given two points $x$ and $y$ in the plane, we denote the line passing from $x$ and $y$ by line $(x, y)$. The direction of this line is considered from $x$ to $y$. Also, we denote the half-line from $x$ passing $y$ by half-line $(x, y)$ and the line segment with endpoints $x$ and $y$ by $\operatorname{seg}(x y)$.

### 5.6 Computing a BOS in the Nearby Case

First, we can see that if $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right) \leq r^{*}$, then there is an optimal partition $R^{*}$ (may not be unique) such that $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$ is a BOS of $R^{*}$. In fact, such a partition can be obtained by considering a point in $D_{1}^{*} \cap D_{2}^{*}$ and two half-lines from it passing the intersection points of $\partial D_{1}^{*}$ (boundary of $D_{1}^{*}$ ) and $\partial D_{2}^{*}$. In this section, when we say the dominating points of $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$, we mean its dominating points with respect to $R^{*}$. Without loss of generality, we can assume that $D_{2}^{*}$ is the determining disk. We first compute the convex-hull $(P)$ and scale the problem such that it fits in a unit square (multiple both $x$ and $y$ coordinates of the points by the greatest constant such that the convex hull remains inside the square). This step can be done in $O(n \log n)$ time. Note that the scaling will not change the solutions.

Proposition 5.4. If $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right) \leq r^{*}$, then the area of $D_{1}^{*} \cap D_{2}^{*}$ must be greater than a constant factor of the area of $D_{2}^{*}$ (the determining disk).

Proof. We proceed by contradiction. Suppose that such a factor does not exist. This means that we can build a problem instance such that it has a $\operatorname{BOS}\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$ in which the radius of the non-determinig disk $\left(D_{1}^{*}\right)$ becomes infinitely small (because of the nearby assumption and scaling). So, $D_{1}^{*}$ should have at least one dominating point that is not covered by $D_{2}^{*}$. Because the radius of $D_{1}^{*}$ is infinitely small, $\delta$ should tend to $\operatorname{radius}\left(D_{2}^{*}\right)$


Figure 5.4: Enlarging the non-determining disk $D_{1}^{*}$ to cover one of the dominating points of $D_{2}^{*}$ and get a better solution.
(which tends to the radius of the MED of $P$ ). Now, $D_{2}^{*}$ should have at least one dominating point (point $c$ in Figure 5.4) with the $x$-coordinate less than or equal to $c_{2}^{*}$ (otherwise, we can move both $c_{1}^{*}$ and $c_{2}^{*}$ to the right and reduce the radius of $D_{2}^{*}$ which determines the cost). In this configuration, we can enlarge $D_{1}^{*}$ by moving $c_{1}^{*}$ toward this dominating point of $D_{2}^{*}$ while satisfying the PCC in order to cover it and release it from $D_{2}^{*}\left(D_{1}^{*}\right.$ does not lose any of its own points and its radius still remains less than the radius of $D_{2}^{*}$ ). Now, we can reduce the radius of $D_{2}^{*}$ which contradicts the optimallity of $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$ (see Figure 5.4). $\square$

Proposition 5.5. $D_{1}^{*}\left(\right.$ similarly $\left.D_{2}^{*}\right)$ should have a pair of dominating points such that:

1. They lie on different sides of line $\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)$.
2. Their connecting segment does not intersect $\operatorname{seg}\left(c_{1}^{*} c_{2}^{*}\right)$.

Proof. First, we prove that $D_{1}^{*}$ should have a pair of dominating points each on the different sides of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)$. Note that if $D_{1}^{*}$ has three dominating points on one side of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)$, their induced triangle can't cover $c_{1}^{*}$ and based on our general assumption such situation can't happen. Now, suppose that $D_{1}^{*}$ has two dominating points $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ both on a same side of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)$. Because $D_{1}^{*}$ is not MED (it has only two dominating points), the distance between $c_{1}^{*}$ and $c_{2}^{*}$ is exactly $\delta$ (otherwise, move $c_{1}^{*}$ toward the dominating points to get better solution). Because $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ are on a same side of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)$, the region $R:=\operatorname{disk}\left(d_{1}, r^{*}\right) \cap \operatorname{disk}\left(d_{2}, r^{*}\right) \cap \operatorname{disk}\left(c_{2}^{*}, \delta\right)$ is not empty. So, if we slightly move $c_{1}^{*}$ into $R$, we would get a better solution which is contradiction (See Figure 5.5).


Figure 5.5: If $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ are on a same side of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{+}^{i, j}, c_{-}^{i, j}\right),\left(D_{-}^{i, j}, D_{+}^{i, j}\right)$ can't be best optimal
For the second statement, again if $D_{1}^{*}$ has three dominating points such that no pair of them intersect $\operatorname{seg}\left(c_{1}^{*} c_{2}^{*}\right)$, their induced triangle can not contain $c_{1}^{*}$ which is contradiction. Now, suppose that $D_{1}^{*}$ has two dominating points $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ such that their connecting segment intersect $\operatorname{seg}\left(c_{1}^{*} c_{2}^{*}\right)$. Because $\operatorname{seg}\left(d_{1} d_{2}\right)$ has non-empty intersection with the interior of $\operatorname{disk}\left(c_{2}^{*}, \delta\right)$ and this disk is tangent to $c_{1}^{*}$, we can slightly move $c_{1}^{*}$ toward the mid-point of $\operatorname{seg}\left(d_{1} d_{2}\right)$ while we are still inside $\operatorname{disk}\left(c_{2}^{*}, \delta\right)$ to get a better solution.

Considering the four dominating points in the above proposition, we can say that $D_{1}^{*} \cap D_{2}^{*}$ should cover at least a constant factor of the area of convex-hull $(P)$. Furthermore, $D_{1}^{*} \cap D_{2}^{*} \cap$ convex-hull $(P)$ is convex because it is the intersection of convex objects. So, we can build a constant size set of points $\mathcal{M}$ uniformly distributed on convex-hull $(P)$ such that (assuming $\left.d\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right) \leq r^{*}\right)$ for at least one point $\hat{m} \in \mathcal{M}, \hat{m} \in D_{1}^{*} \cap D_{2}^{*} \cap$ convex-hull $(P)$. Because $\hat{m}$ is unknown, for each $m \in \mathcal{M}$, we build a $\operatorname{BOS}\left(D_{1}^{m}, D_{2}^{m}\right)$ assuming $m \in D_{1}^{*} \cap D_{2}^{*}$ and finally pick a best solution in $\left\{\left(D_{1}^{m}, D_{2}^{m}\right): m \in \mathcal{M}\right\}$ and set it as $\left(D_{1}^{N A}, D_{2}^{N A}\right)$. Based on this idea, we present our algorithm to find $\left(D_{1}^{m}, D_{2}^{m}\right)$ for a given point $m \in \operatorname{convex}-h u l l(P)$.

Let $\mathcal{X}$ be a set of 360 directed lines (each line has a positive direction) passing through $m$ such that the angle between each directed line and its neighbour lines is $1^{\circ}$. Now, there is a directed line in $\mathcal{X}$ such that its angel with $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)$ is at most $1^{\circ}$ and $c_{1}^{*}$ lies on the negative side of $c_{2}^{*}$ on the line (note that $D_{2}^{*}$ is the determining disk according to our assumption). We call this directed line the correct directed line which is unknown. So, we assume each line $l \in \mathcal{X}$ as the correct directed line and compute a $\operatorname{BOS}\left(D_{1}^{m, l}, D_{2}^{m, l}\right)$ having this assumption and finally pick the best one as $\left(D_{1}^{m}, D_{2}^{m}\right)$.

So, assume that a directed line $l \in \mathcal{X}$ called the $m$-line is given. Here we explain how to compute ( $D_{1}^{m, l}, D_{2}^{m, l}$ ). The $m$-line divides the points of $P$ into two disjoint sets one on the
right side and the other on the left side of the $m$-line. We sort these sets according to the polar angles of their points (from $m$ ) with respect to the positive direction of the $m$-line. These angles should lie between $-180^{\circ}$ and $180^{\circ}$ and we sort them by increasing magnitude (see Figure 5.6 for an illustration). Based on these orders, we denote the two sequences of points on the left and right side of the $m$-line by $\left(p_{1}, \ldots, p_{n^{\prime}}\right)$ and ( $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{n^{\prime \prime}}$ ) respectively. We call a point $p$-type (resp. $q$-type) if it is in the first (resp. second) sequence. We also call a half-line from $m$ that separates $\left\{p_{1}, \ldots, p_{i}\right\}$ from $\left\{p_{i+1}, \ldots, p_{n^{\prime}}\right\}$ an $i^{\text {th }}$-separator of the $p$-type points. A $j^{t h}$-separator of $q$-type points is defined similarly (we assume that the $0^{t h}$ and $n^{\prime t h}$ (resp. $n^{\prime \prime t h}$ ) separators have the entire $p$-type (resp. $q$-type) points in one side). The $i^{t h}$ and $j^{t h}$ separators of the $p$-type and $q$-type points partition the plane into two parts. We call this partition the ( $i, j$ )-partition of the plane. One part of this partition contains the positive direction of the $m$-line which we call it the positive side of the partition and we call the other part the negative side of the partition.

Observation 5.3. If $d\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right) \leq r^{*}, m=\hat{m}$ and the $m$-line is correct, then an $(i, j)$-partition can be considered as $R^{*}$ and $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$ is its BOS.

Note that in the above observation, the two separators from $m$ passing the intersection points of $D_{1}^{*}$ and $D_{2}^{*}$ give us the desired $(i, j)$-partition. We denote the set of points in the positive and negative sides of the partition by $P_{+}^{i, j}$ and $P_{-}^{i, j}$ respectively. Based on our algorithm for restricted PCTCP, a BOS for an $(i, j)$-partition can be computed in $O(n \log n)$ time. Let $\left(D_{-}^{i, j}, D_{+}^{i, j}\right)$ (with centers $\left(c_{-}^{i, j}, c_{+}^{i, j}\right)$ respectively) be the output of this algorithm for the ( $i, j$ )-partition (see Figure 5.6 for an example). We refer to the first (resp. second) disk the negative disk (resp. positive disk) of the partition. A naive approach to obtain $\left(D_{1}^{*}, D_{2}^{*}\right)$ is to apply our restricted PCTCP algorithm to each of the $(i, j)$-partitions and pick the best one. This will give us an $O\left(n^{3} \log n\right)$ time complexity as there are quadratic partitions. In the following we show how we can get $\left(D_{1}^{m, l}, D_{2}^{m, l}\right)$ by evaluating a sub-quadratic number of partitions. The idea is first computing $r^{m, l}$ which is the best cost we can get assuming $m$ and $l$ are correct. Then, we use it to compute ( $D_{1}^{m, l}, D_{2}^{m, l}$ ).

### 5.6.1 Computing $r^{m, l}$

Let us define $M^{+}$as a $\left(n^{\prime}+1\right) \times\left(n^{\prime \prime}+1\right)$ matrix whose $[i, j]$-element $\left(0 \leq i \leq n^{\prime}\right.$ and $\left.0 \leq j \leq n^{\prime \prime}\right)$ is $\operatorname{radius}\left(D_{+}^{i, j}\right)$. We call $M^{+}[i, j]$ non-critical if $D_{+}^{i, j}$ is the MED of $P_{+}^{i, j}$. Otherwise, we call it critical. We call $M^{+}[i, j]$ a valid element if $M^{+}[i, j] \geq \operatorname{radius}\left(D_{-}^{i, j}\right)$ and we call it non-valid otherwise. Because we assumed that $l$ is correct, we can assume that positive disks determine $r^{m, l}$. This means that $r^{m, l}$ is indeed the minimum valid element of $M^{+}$.

Proposition 5.6. For any $0 \leq i \leq n^{\prime}$ and $0 \leq j \leq n^{\prime \prime}$, we have:

1. If $M^{+}[i, j]$ is non-critical, then $M^{+}\left[i^{\prime}, j^{\prime}\right] \geq M^{+}[i, j]$ for all $i^{\prime} \geq i$ and $j^{\prime} \geq j$.


Figure 5.6: An example ( $i, j$ )-partition of a set of points and a BOS for the partition.
2. If $M^{+}[i, j]>\operatorname{radius}\left(D_{-}^{i, j}\right), M^{+}[i, j]$ is non-critical.
3. If $M^{+}[i, j]$ is valid and critical, then $M^{+}[i, j]=\operatorname{radius}\left(D_{-}^{i, j}\right)$ and $d\left(c_{-}^{i, j}, c_{+}^{i, j}\right)=\delta$.

Proof. 1,2) We prove the first statement and the second statement is similar. Because $M^{+}[i, j]$ is non-critical, its dominating points make a triangle for $c_{+}^{i, j}$ (their induced triangle covers $c_{+}^{i, j}$. On the other hand, $P_{+}^{i, j} \subset P_{+}^{i^{\prime}, j^{\prime}}$. So, $D_{+}^{i^{\prime}, j^{\prime}}$ contains the dominating points of $D_{+}^{i, j}$ and its radius is greater or equal than $D_{+}^{i, j}$ which gives the Proposition. 3) Suppose $M^{+}[i, j]$ is critical and $M^{+}[i, j]>\operatorname{radius}\left(D_{-}^{i, j}\right)$. Then, we can slightly move both centers toward the dominating points of $D_{+}^{i, j}$ and get a solution with reduced cost which contradicts best optimality of $\left(D_{+}^{i, j}, D_{-}^{i, j}\right) 4$ ) If $M^{+}[i, j]>\operatorname{radius}\left(D_{-}^{i, j}\right)$, based on case $3, M^{+}[i, j]$ is non-critical while we assumed it is critical. 5) If $d\left(c_{-}^{i, j}, c_{+}^{i, j}\right)<\delta$, we can slightly move $c_{+}^{i, j}$ toward the dominating points of $D_{+}^{i, j}$ without violating the PCC and reduce the radius of $D_{+}^{i, j}$ which again contradicts best optimality.

We search $M^{+}$to find $r^{m, l}$ as follows: we maintain a set of candidate values. During the search, when we evaluate an element $M^{+}[i, j]$ (computing $\left(D_{-}^{i, j}, D_{+}^{i, j}\right.$ ) and its dominating points), if $M^{+}[i, j]$ is valid, we add it to the candidate values and finally we set $r^{m, l}$ as the minimum candidate value.

In order to search $M^{+}$, we maintain two variables $I$ and $J$ where $I$ stores the index of the current row that we are searching and $J$ stores the column index for which we can discard any column with index greater than that. Initially, we set $I=0, J=n^{\prime \prime}\left(n^{\prime \prime}\right.$ is the number of columns of $M^{+}$). We search the $I^{\text {th }}$-row by evaluating its elements backward starting from its $J^{\text {th }}$-element (if $J=-1$, the matrix search is done) toward its first element. Because we are looking for a minimum valid element of the matrix, we can use Proposition 5.6 to improve our search as follows: during the traversal of the row, if $M^{+}[I, j]$ is valid and noncritical, we set $J=j-1$ (because $D_{+}^{I, j}$ is the MED of $P_{+}^{I, j}$, when we add more points to the
positive side we can't get a smaller positive disk). We finish traversing the row and increase $I$ by one if either the row is exhausted or we reach an index $j$ such that $M^{+}[I, j]$ becomes non-valid. Note that in this case, $D_{-}^{I, j}$ is the MED of $P_{-}^{I, j}$ (similar to Proposition 5.6 part 3). Here we might have a valid element on some index $j^{\prime}<j$ but, the cost of this solution can not be less than $\operatorname{radius}\left(D_{-}^{I, j}\right)$ (we add points to the negative side as we move left wise on a row). In order to make sure that we will count such costs in our algorithm, we can add $\operatorname{radius}\left(D_{-}^{I, j}\right)$ to the candidate set of the directed line in $\mathcal{X}$ with the opposite direction of the current $m$-line.

We continue this procedure until no element is left. Note that when none of $D_{-}^{i, j}$ and $D_{+}^{i, j}$ are a MED, we can't discard any element from the matrix because it is possible that when we move a point from one side to the other, the radii of both disks become greater or smaller while they remain equal (this situation can happen because of the PCC). So the number of evaluations in the above schema might be still quadratic. Next, we explain how to fix this problem.

Proposition 5.7. If $M^{+}[i, j]$ is valid-critical and $q_{j}$ is not a dominating point of $D_{+}^{i, j}$, then $M^{+}[i, j-1] \geq M^{+}[i, j]$.

Proof. Because $D_{+}^{i, j}$ is not a MED, its center can't get closer to its farthest points in $P_{+}^{i, j}$ (dominating points of $D_{+}^{i, j}$ ) namely $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ because of the PCC. Now, by adding $q_{j}$ to $P_{-}^{i, j}, D_{-}^{i, j-1}$ needs to cover more points. If its radius gets bigger, the proposition follows. Otherwise, according to the fact that $q_{j}$ is not a dominating point of $D_{+}^{i, j}$, it is not possible to put $c_{-}^{i, j-1}$ on a place such that allow $c_{+}^{i, j-1}$ to get closer to $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ due to best optimality of $\left(D_{-}^{i, j}, D_{+}^{i, j}\right)$.

Note that in this proposition, if $q_{j}$ does not become a dominating point of $D_{-}^{i, j-1}$, then $M^{+}[i, j-1]=M^{+}[i, j]$. A similar statement is also correct for two consecutive valid-critical elements in a column. Based on the above proposition, we can improve our matrix search as follows: while traversing a row(left wise), when we hit a valid-critical element $M^{+}[i, j]$, if both dominating points of $D_{+}^{i, j}$ are $p$-type, we discard the rest of the row (because by traversing a row, only $q$-type points will move to the other part of the partition) and continue the search on the next row. Similarly, if both dominating points of $D_{-}^{i, j}$ are $q$-type, we can discard the rest of its column. Otherwise, we jump to the first (largest index) element of the row for which a $q$-type dominating point of $D_{+}^{i, j}$ moves to the negative side and discard all the elements in between (because of Proposition 5.7). Similarly, we discard the portion of the rest of the column of $M^{+}[i, j]$ with row index smaller than the index of the $p$-type dominating point(s) of $D_{-}^{i, j}$ (applying the column version of Proposition 5.7).

When we evaluate a valid-critical element $M^{+}[i, j]$, if we didn't discard the entire rest of its row or column, we mark the portion of its column that is not discarded after the evaluation of $M^{+}[i, j]$. Now, when we traverse the rows, we ignore and jump discarded and
marked elements. Specially, if after evaluating an element $M^{+}[i, j]$, the largest index of the $q$-type dominating point of $D_{+}^{i, j}$ is $j^{\prime}$ and $M^{+}\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]$ is marked, we continue searching from the first(biggest index) unmarked or undiscarded element of the $i^{\text {th }}$-row after $M^{+}\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]$. Applying this marking schema in the matrix search will guarantee that the number of evaluations is linear. The problem of our matrix search with marking schema is that we may mark the minimum valid element of $M^{+}$and so get an incorrect $r^{m, l}$. In the rest, we will show how to overcome this problem.

We call the above matrix search initial search of $M^{+}$from top-right. Another way of searching $M^{+}$is starting the search from $M^{+}\left[n^{\prime}, 0\right]$ (the first element of the last row). But this time, instead of traversing the rows from right to left, we traverse the columns from bottom to top. The way we search the matrix is exactly symmetrical to the top-right search but here we mark sub-rows instead of sub-columns. We call this matrix search the initial search of $M^{+}$from bottom-left. After performing two initial searches on $M^{+}$one from the top-right and one from the bottom-left, still there might be some elements that are marked in both initial searches. We call these elements as doubly-marked elements. The next theorem enables us to search the doubly-marked elements in an efficient way which leads us to find $r^{m, l}$. Let us denote the doubly-marked elements of $M^{+}$by Doubly-Marked $\left(M^{+}\right)$.

Theorem 5.1. By evaluating a doubly-marked element $M^{+}[i, j]$, we can discard one of the following sub-rows or sub-columns of $M^{+}$:

1. Elements above $[i, j]\left(M^{+}\left[i^{\prime}, j\right]\right.$ with $\left.i^{\prime} \leq i\right)$.
2. Elements below $[i, j]\left(M^{+}\left[i^{\prime}, j\right]\right.$ with $\left.i^{\prime} \geq i\right)$.
3. Elements in front of $[i, j]\left(M^{+}\left[i, j^{\prime}\right]\right.$ where $\left.j^{\prime} \geq j\right)$.

Suppose that $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$ is a given doubly-marked element which is marked when we evaluate $M^{+}[\bar{i}, \bar{j}]$ and $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \hat{j}]$ in the initial top-right and bottom-left search respectively. When we evaluate $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$, we get $D_{+}^{\hat{i}, \bar{j}}$ and $D_{-}^{\hat{i}, \bar{j}}$ and their dominating points. For the sake of simplicity, let us denote the first disk by $D_{+}^{\prime}$ and the second disk by $D_{-}^{\prime}$. If $D_{-}^{\prime}$ is MED, then either $\operatorname{radius}\left(D_{-}^{\prime}\right) \geq \operatorname{radius}\left(D_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ or $\operatorname{radius}\left(D_{-}^{\prime}\right)<\operatorname{radius}\left(D_{+}^{\prime}\right)$. In the former, case 1 in Theorem 5.1 happens and in the latter, $D_{+}^{\prime}$ is MED (otherwise we can reduce its cost and the solution can't be optimal) and so cases 2 and 3 of the theorem happen. We have a similar argument when $D_{+}^{\prime}$ is a MED. So, the only left case is when none of the disks is MED. Note that in this case each of $D_{+}^{\prime}$ and $D_{-}^{\prime}$ has exactly two dominating points. Let $h_{1}, h_{2}$ be the dominating points of $D_{+}^{\prime}$ and $h_{1}^{\prime}, h_{2}^{\prime}$ be the dominating points of $D_{-}^{\prime}$. If both $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ are $p$-type, case 3 happens (when we traverse the $\hat{i}^{\text {th }}$-row from left to right, we only add $q$-type points to the positive side). Also, if they are both $q$-type, case 2 happens. The bottleneck of proving Theorem 5.1 is when $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ have different types. In order to prove Theorem 5.1 in this special case, we use two key properties. First $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$ should be
doubly-marked and second, $m$ should be inside the convex hull of the points. We leave this proof to the end of this chapter and in the rest, we focus on how to use Theorem 5.1 to search Doubly-Marked $\left(M^{+}\right)$efficiently.

### 5.6.2 Searching the Doubly-Marked Elements

For simplicity, we assume that $n^{\prime}=2^{g}-1$ for some integer value $g>1$ (so the number of rows is a power of 2 ). We define the $k^{t h}$-division of $M^{+}$as the sub-matrix consisting of the rows from $n^{\prime} / 2^{k}$ to $n^{\prime} / 2^{k-1}-1$ (we search the first row independently by evaluating all of its doubly-marked elements). We search the divisions of $M^{+}$in order from its first division. Let us denote the $k^{t h}$-division sub-matrix by $D I V_{k}$. Here, we explain how to search $D I V_{k}$. Let $I$ and $J$ be the row and column indices (with respect to $D I V_{k}$ ) of the element that we are processing at each time. Initially, we have $I=J=1$ (the first row and column of $D I V_{k}$ ). We evaluate the non-discarded elements of the $I^{\text {th }}$-row from left to right starting from the column index $J$. If the result of an evaluation is case 1 or 2 in Theorem 5.1, we discard the corresponding portion of $M^{+}$(in all divisions) and increase $J$ by one. But if case 3 happens, we go to the next row and increase $I$ (we always move rightwise). After we proceed with all divisions, some elements might left unevaluated and undiscarded in each division due to the occurrence of case 1 . We recursively perform the entire above process on these unevaluated elements in each division until all elements are either discarded or evaluated. So, if only doubly-marked elements remained in $M^{+}$(we have discarded all other elements in the two initial searches), then the procedure SEARCH-DM $\left(M^{+}\right)$in Algorithm 8 will give us a minimum valid element of $M^{+}$.

```
Algorithm 8 SEARCH-DM( \(M\) )
    Let \(M\) be a \(n \times m\) matrix.
    Split \(M\) into \(\log n\) divisions \(\left\{D I V_{1}, \ldots, D I V_{\log n}\right\}\).
    for \(k=1, \ldots, \log n\) do \(/ /\) We search the divisions in order.
        Set \(I=J=1\).
        repeat
            Evaluate \(D I V_{k}[I, J]\) and discard the portion of \(M\) according to Theorem 5.1.
            if (case 1 or 2 happens) and \(J<m\) then \(J=J+1\).
            else
                \(I=I+1\).
                end if
        until \(I>n / 2^{k} / /\) number of rows in \(D I V_{k}\).
        SEARCH-DM \(\left(D I V_{k}\right)\) if \(D I V_{k}\) has unevaluated/undiscarded element.
    end for
    Evaluate all non-discarded elements of the first row of \(M\). // Until the case 3 happens.
```

Theorem 5.2. SEARCH-DM( $\left.M^{+}\right)$evaluates $O(n \log n)$ elements of $M^{+}$.

Proof. First, if only cases 2 and 3 happen in the algorithm, then we don't need the recursion part and so the total number of evaluations becomes $O(n \log n)$ (in each iteration of searching $D I V_{k}$ either $I$ or $J$ would be increased). Now, suppose that any of the cases 1,2 , or 3 can happen. Note that the number of case 3 s in all divisions of a same recursion level (the original $\log n$ divisions has recursion level zero and the level of the divisions in the recursion part of the algorithm is defined based on their appearance in the recursion tree) is at most $n$ because two divisions of a same level has disjoint rows. Because we have $O(\log n)$ levels, the total number of case 3 evaluations is $O(n \log n)$. Now, if after the evaluation of some $D I V_{k}[i, j]$, case 1 happens, we can't discard any new element from $D I V_{k}$ but all the elements above $D I V_{k}[i, j]$ in $M$ should be discarded. This means that while searching each of the divisions $D I V_{k+1}, \ldots, D I V_{\log n}$ and the first row, we don't need to evaluate the $j^{\text {th }}$-column. On the other hand, $D I V_{k}$ has $\log \left(n / 2^{k}\right)=\log n-k$ divisions and a row. Each of these divisions can have at most one cases 1 or 2 in the $j^{\text {th }}$-column. So, we can have a correspondence between the extra cases 1 and 2 evaluations in searching the divisions and the first row of $D I V_{k}$ (not its recursion part) and the matrix elements that we didn't evaluate in $D I V_{k+1}, \ldots, D I V_{\log n}$. So, the total number of evaluations would remain $O(n \log n)$.

Note that in a constant time, we can check whether an element is discarded or not. Because in each recursion level, the divisions are disjoint, at each level we check each element of $M$ at most once and because we have $O(\log n)$ levels, the total cost of matrix element checking is $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$. On the other hand, our algorithm to solve the restricted PCTCP costs $O(n \log n)$, if we directly use it to evaluate matrix elements, the total time complexity of SEARCH-DM $\left(M^{+}\right)$becomes $O\left(n^{2} \log ^{2} n\right)$. As we mentioned in Section 2, the bottleneck of solving the restricted PCTCP is computing the farthest-point Voronoi diagram of each part of the partition which costs $O(n \log n)$. So, if we can reduce this cost by performing a preprocessing step, we can reduce the overall time complexity of SEARCH-DM( $M^{+}$). In order to speed up matrix element evaluation, we use the following lemma from [30]:

Lemma: [30] If $X$ and $Y$ are arbitrary sets of points in the plane, then $\mathcal{F}(X \cup Y)$ can be constructed from $\mathcal{F}(X)$ and $\mathcal{F}(Y)$ in $O(|X|+|Y|)$ time $(\mathcal{F}(X)$ represents the farthest-point Voronoi diagram of $X$ ).

The preprocessing step: Let $\left(X_{i}^{+}, X_{i}^{-}\right)$(resp. $\left.\left(Y_{j}^{+}, Y_{j}^{-}\right)\right)$be the partition of the $p$-type (resp. $q$-type) points induced by the $i^{t h}$-separator (resp. $j^{\text {th }}$-separator). In the preprocessing phase, we compute the farthest-point Voronoi diagram of all $X_{i}^{+}, X_{i}^{-}, Y_{j}^{+}$and $Y_{j}^{-}$for $0 \leq i \leq n^{\prime}$ and $0 \leq j \leq n^{\prime \prime}$. This step can be done in $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ time using the above lemma because as $i$ or $j$ increases or decreases by one, a point from one side would be added to the other side.

Now, we can reduce the cost of matrix element evaluation as follows: In order to evaluate $M^{+}[i, j]$, we construct $\mathcal{F}\left(P_{+}^{i, j}\right)$ (resp. $\mathcal{F}\left(P_{-}^{i, j}\right)$ ) in $O(n)$ time by applying the lemma to $\mathcal{F}\left(X_{i}^{+}\right)$and $\mathcal{F}\left(Y_{j}^{+}\right)$(resp. $\mathcal{F}\left(X_{i}^{-}\right)$and $\left.\mathcal{F}\left(Y_{j}^{-}\right)\right)$. So, the total complexity of matrix evaluation is $O(n)$. This reduces the time complexity of SEARCH-DM $\left(M^{+}\right)$and so the cost of finding $r^{m, l}$ to $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$.

### 5.6.3 Obtaining $\left(D_{-}^{m, l}, D_{+}^{m, l}\right)$ having $r^{m, l}$

Note that we already have an initial solution that is optimal and its cost is $r^{m, l}$ (from our search for $\left.r^{m, l}\right)$. But, there might be another optimal solution with the same cost and a smaller non-determining disk that we discarded during the search. If this initial solution is not best optimal, then the non-determining disk of a BOS must be strictly smaller than its determining disk. So, we can assume that the positive disk of the BOS is the MED of the points in the positive side. Consider a matrix $\bar{M}$ for which its $(i, j)^{t h}$-element is the radius of the MED of the points on the positive side of the $(i, j)$-partition. We search $\bar{M}$ from the last element of its first row and traverse the rows backwards (similar to the initial top-right search). After evaluating an element $(i, j)$ of the matrix (which can be done in linear time according to [51]), if it is bigger than $r^{m, l}$, we discard all elements $\left(i, j^{\prime}\right)$ of the matrix with $j^{\prime} \geq j$ because they are all greater than $r^{m, l}$ and if it is less than $r^{m, l}$, we discard the elements with $i^{\prime} \leq i$ because they are all less than $r^{m, l}$. But, when it is exactly $r^{m, l}$, we compute its non-determining disk using the restricted PCTCP algorithm (costs $O(n \log n))$ and store its radius. Here, we can also discard all elements $\left(i^{\prime}, j\right)$ of the matrix with $i^{\prime} \leq i$. This is because as we advance more left into the row, we would have more points on the negative side and so if there is any optimal solution on the left of $(i, j)$ in the row, its non-determining disk should cover more points and thus can't give us a better solution. So, by each evaluation, we discard a row or a column of the matrix which means that the total number of evaluations is linear. Therefore, the total complexity of finding a BOS given $r^{m, l}$ is $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$. Combining it with the complexity of computing $r^{m, l}$ gives us the total time complexity $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$ to obtain $\left(D_{1}^{N A}, D_{2}^{N A}\right)$.

### 5.7 Computing a BOS in the Far Distant Case

For the far distant case, we assume that $d\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)>3 r^{*}$. In this situation, the approach of Sharir's far distant case [59] for the decision 2-center problem still works as follows: set an arbitrary point in the plane as the origin and build 360 directed lines $\mathcal{X}$ passing from the origin such that the degree between each line and its neighbours is $1^{\circ}$. Then, for one unknown correct line $\vec{x}_{c} \in \mathcal{X}$, the angle between line $\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right)$ and $\vec{x}_{c}$ is at most $1^{\circ}$. Suppose that we set $\vec{x}_{c}$ is the $x$-axis and sort the $x$-coordinates of the points in $P$ as a sequence $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ (see Figure 5.7). Now, if we consider the set of lines $\mathcal{L}_{F}^{\vec{x}_{c}}=\left\{x_{i} \perp x_{i+1}: 1 \leq i<n\right\}\left(x_{i} \perp x_{i+1}\right.$ is the vertical line on $\vec{x}_{c}$ at the mid-point of $\left.\left[x_{i}, x_{i+1}\right]\right)$, at least one $l \in \mathcal{L}_{F}^{\vec{x}_{c}}$ will separate
$D_{1}^{*}$ from $D_{2}^{*}$. Because $\vec{x}_{c}$ is unknown, we build $\mathcal{L}_{F}^{\vec{x}}$ for all $\vec{x} \in \mathcal{X}$ and set $\mathcal{L}_{F}=\bigcup_{\vec{x} \in \mathcal{X}} \mathcal{L}_{F}^{\vec{x}}$. Note that the number of lines in $\mathcal{L}_{F}$ is linear. Here, each line $l \in \mathcal{L}_{F}$ induces a partition on $P$. We apply our algorithm for the restricted PCTCP to each of such partitions and set the best one as $\left(D_{1}^{F A}, D_{2}^{F A}\right)$. So, the time complexity of the far distant case is $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$.


Figure 5.7: Finding a separating line in the far distant case

### 5.8 Computing a BOS for the Distant Case.

In the distant case, we assume that $r^{*}<d\left(c_{1}^{*}, c_{2}^{*}\right) \leq 3 r^{*}$. The idea is to first compute $r^{D A}$ by imposing the condition that the disks are congruent and then using $r^{D A}$ to build $\left(D_{1}^{D A}, D_{2}^{D A}\right)$. So, let $\left(\hat{D}_{1}, \hat{D}_{2}\right)$ with centers $\left(\hat{c}_{1}, \hat{c}_{2}\right)$ be a BOS having the distant assumption such that the radii of the disks are equal (disks are congruent). So, the cost of this solution is $r^{D A}$. Here, the objective is to compute ( $\hat{D}_{1}, \hat{D}_{2}$ ). We first apply the algorithm of [43] to obtain an optimal solution for the 2 -center problem on $P$ with minimum distance between their centers. In order to have this additional proximity property in the solution, we replace Hershberger's feasibility test [33] in [43] with Sharir's unparallelized feasibility test in [59] (note that we can't use Sharir's algorithm in [59] because it uses simulating parallel feasibility test which makes the algorithm impractical). If the distance between the centers of this solution is equal or less than $\delta$, we set $r^{D A}$ as the cost of this solution and try to build $\left(D_{1}^{D A}, D_{2}^{D A}\right)$ (will be discussed later in the chapter) based on this cost (if we couldn't build a solution with this cost satisfying the distant assumption, we would know that a BOS with this cost exists in the far distant or the nearby cases and thus, we won't miss the BOS for the problem). Otherwise, we can assume that $d\left(\hat{c}_{1}, \hat{c}_{2}\right)=\delta$.

Similar to the Section 3, we build a set of constant size directed lines $\mathcal{X}$ such that for at least one directed line $\vec{x} \in \mathcal{X}, \hat{c}_{1}$ is on the negative side of $\hat{c}_{2}$ and the angle between line $\left(\hat{c}_{1}, \hat{c}_{2}\right)$ and $\vec{x}$ is at most $1^{\circ}$. Without loss of generality we can assume that $\vec{x}$ is horizontal and its positive direction is right wise. Let $v_{1}$ be the leftmost point of $\hat{D}_{2}$ not in the interior of $\hat{D}_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ be the rightmost point of $\hat{D}_{1}$ not in the interior of $\hat{D}_{2}$. If $v_{1}$ lies to the right of $v_{2}$, we already catch the BOS in the far distant case and we are done. So, assume that $v_{1}$ is on the left side of $v_{2}$. The objective here is to find a vertical line $l$ such that it separates $\hat{c}_{1}$ from $v_{1}$. First, note that the difference between the $x$-coordinates of $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ is at least


Figure 5.8: Separating $\hat{c}_{1}$ and $v_{1}$ by a vertical line
$0.9 r^{*} / 2$ and $r^{*}>\Delta x / 4$ where $\Delta x$ is the difference between the $x$-coordinates of the leftmost and rightmost points. Having $\Delta x$, one of the vertical lines at the distance $k \Delta x / 9$ (for some $1 \leq k \leq 9$ ) from the leftmost point will separate $\hat{c}_{1}$ from $v_{1}$. So, we can build a set $\mathcal{L}_{D}$ of lines such that for at least one line $l \in \mathcal{L}_{D}$, there exist an $x$-axis in $\mathcal{X}$ such that with respect to that, $l$ is vertical and separates $\hat{c}_{1}$ and $v_{1}$.

Note that all points of $P$ on the left-side of $l$ are covered by $\hat{D}_{1}$ and so, we can assume that $\hat{c}_{1}$ is on the boundary of the intersection hull of these points at radius $r^{*}$. According to the assumption $d\left(\hat{c}_{1}, \hat{c}_{2}\right)=\delta$, we can say that at radius $r^{*}$, the distance between the intersection hull of the points covered by $\hat{D}_{1}$ and the intersection hull of the points not covered by $\hat{D}_{1}$ is exactly $\delta$ (the distance between two intersection hulls is the minimum possible distance between their points). In the rest of this section, we discuss how we can use this property to compute $r^{D A}$ and ( $\hat{D}_{1}, \hat{D}_{2}$ ).

Suppose that $l$ is a given vertical line in $\mathcal{L}_{D}$. Denote the set of points in $P$ on the left side (resp. right side) of $l$ by $P^{-}$(resp. $P^{+}$). Also, denote the intersection hull of $P^{-}$with respect to a radius $r>0$ by $H^{-}(r)$. Define $r_{l}$ as the minimum radius for which there exist a point $x \in \partial H^{-}\left(r_{l}\right)$ such that the distance between $x$ and the intersection hull of the points in $P$ not covered by $\operatorname{Disk}\left(x, r_{l}\right)$ (the disk with center $x$ and radius $\left.r_{l}\right)$ is exactly $\delta$. So, in order to find $r^{D A}$ it is enough to compute $r_{l}$ for all $l \in \mathcal{L}_{D}$ and $\operatorname{set} r^{D A}=\min \left\{r_{l}: l \in \mathcal{L}_{D}\right\}$.

In order to find $r_{l}$, we need a feasibility test to answer the following question: given an $r$, determine whether $r$ is greater, equal or smaller than $r_{l}$. Consider the set of circles $\mathcal{A}(r)=\left\{\operatorname{circle}(p, r): p \in P^{+}\right\}(\operatorname{circle}(p, r)$ is the circle with center $p$ and radius $r)$ and compute the intersection points of each circle of $\mathcal{A}(r)$ with $\partial H^{-}(r)$. These intersection points and the vertices of $\partial H^{-}(r)$ induce a partition on $\partial H^{-}(r)$. We denote this partition by $\pi(r)$ which can be considered as an alternating sequence of arc interiors and endpoints. We assume that the order is clockwise starting from its leftmost endpoint. We call each of these arc interiors and endpoints a field of $\pi(r)$ (so, if $\pi(r)$ has $k$ arcs, it would have $2 k$ fields). See Figure 5.9. We observe that for each field $f$ of $\pi(r), \operatorname{disk}(x, r)$ covers a same set of points for any $x \in f$. For simplicity, we call the set of points in $P$ covered by $\operatorname{disk}(x, r)$,


Figure 5.9: The circles of $\mathcal{A}(r)$ and its induced partition $\pi(r)$ on $\partial H^{-}(r)$
the points covered by $f$ at radius $r$. So, $\pi(r)$ is a sequence of fields each covers a specific set of points. For each field $f \in \pi(r)$, denote the intersection hull of the points not covered by $f$ with respect to $r$ by $H_{f}^{+}(r)$. Note that the difference between the set of points covered by two neighbour fields in $\pi(r)$ is at most two(based on our assumption that the points are in general position). Also, we can compute the sequence of disks that enter or leave $H_{f}^{+}(r)$ when $f$ varies in $\pi(r)$ in the clockwise order. Having this sequence allows us to use the data structure of [35] to compute $H_{f^{\prime}}^{+}(r)$ having $H_{f}^{+}(r)$ in $O(\log n)$ amortized time where $f^{\prime}$ is a neighbour field of $f$ in $\pi(r)$. So, to do the feasibility test, we first compute $H_{f_{0}}^{+}(r)$ where $f_{0}$ is the first field of $\pi(r)$ and then traverse $\pi(r)$ in the clockwise order and at each field $f$, update the intersection hull of the points not covered by $f$ and compute $d\left(f, H_{f}^{+}(r)\right)$. Because both $f$ and $H_{f}^{+}(r)$ are convex, we can compute the distance between them in $O(\log n)$ time [20]. During the traversal, we stop and return greater as soon as for a field $f, d\left(f, H_{f}^{+}(r)\right)<\delta$. If we reach the end of the traversal, return equal if we've seen a field $f$ for which $d\left(f, H_{f}^{+}(r)\right)=\delta$ and we couldn't find any other field $f^{\prime}$ with $d\left(f^{\prime}, H_{f^{\prime}}^{+}(r)\right)<\delta$. Otherwise, we return smaller. So, the feasibility test can be done in $O(n \log n)$ time. The Procedure RL-FTEST( $r$ ) in Algorithm 9 represent the pseudocode of our feasibility test.

```
Algorithm 9 RL-FTEST( \(r\) )
    Compute \(H^{-}(r)\) and the sequence \(\pi(r)=\left(f_{0}, \ldots, f_{m}\right)\) on it.
    Let \(f=f_{0}\).
    Compute \(H_{f}^{+}(r)\) and the set of points covered by \(f\) at radius \(r\).
    Let \(d_{\text {min }}=d\left(f, H_{f}^{+}(r)\right)\).
    Traverse \(\pi(r)\) and at each field store the point(s) (at most two) that leave/enter the
    coverance.
    for \(f=f_{1}, \ldots, f_{m}\) do
        Compute \(H_{f}^{+}(r)\) by updating from \(H_{f-1}^{+}(r)\).
        \(d_{\text {min }}=\min \left\{d\left(f, H_{f}^{+}(r)\right), d_{\text {min }}\right\}\).
        if \(d_{\text {min }}<\delta\) then
            Return Greater.
        end if
    end for
    if \(d_{\text {min }}=\delta\) then Return Equal
    else
        Return Smaller
    end if
```

Now, we discuss our algorithm to compute $r_{l}$. We first build $\mathcal{F}\left(P^{-}\right)$(farthest-point Voronoi diagram of $P^{-}$) and do a binary search on the weights (see Appendix A) of the vertices of $\mathcal{F}\left(P^{-}\right)$using the above feasibility test to obtain an interval $I^{*}=\left(i_{0}, i_{1}\right)$ such that $r_{l} \in I^{*}$ and for each vertex $v$ of the diagram, $I^{*}$ does not contain the weight of $v$. Because we use $O(\log n)$ feasibility tests, the cost of obtaining $I^{*}$ is $O\left(n \log ^{2} n\right)$. As soon as we found $I^{*}$, we can build $H^{-}\left(i_{0}\right)$ and the set of its arms $A^{-}$.

The idea here is simulating the propagation of $\pi(r)$ and the circles in $\mathcal{A}(r)$ when $r$ varies from $i_{0}$ to $i_{1}$. To do this, we assume that at time $t \in I^{*}$, the radius of $\pi$ and the circles in $\mathcal{A}$ is $t$ (if a field is an endpoint, its radius is the radius of an arc containing it). The minimum time $t$ such that $d\left(f, H_{f}^{+}(t)\right) \leq \delta$ for a field $f$ in $\pi(t)$ is actually our $r_{l}$. Consider $t_{1}, t_{2} \in I^{*}$ and let $\pi\left(t_{1}\right)=\left(f_{1}, \ldots, f_{j}\right)$ and $\pi\left(t_{2}\right)=\left(f_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, f_{j^{\prime}}^{\prime}\right)$. We say that $\pi\left(t_{1}\right)$ and $\pi\left(t_{2}\right)$ have a same structure if $j=j^{\prime}$ and for each $1 \leq i \leq j, f_{i}$ and $f_{i}^{\prime}$ cover exactly a same set of points. In this case, we consider $f_{i}$ and $f_{i}^{\prime}$ as a same field in different times. Note that if $\pi\left(t_{1}\right)$ and $\pi\left(t_{2}\right)$ have different structures, for any $t \geq t_{2}, \pi\left(t_{1}\right)$ has a different structure from $\pi(t)$. So, we can consider a sequence of times $T=\left(t_{0}=i_{0}, t_{1}, \ldots, t_{k}=i_{1}\right)$ for some integer $k$ such that $\pi$ has a same structure between any two consecutive times in the sequence. We call this sequence the event-sequence and each time in this sequence an event-time. We can see that a time $t$ is an event-time if one of the following events happens at $t$ :

1. Circle in $\mathcal{A}(t)$ collides with $H^{-}(t)$.
2. Two endpoints of $\pi(t-\epsilon)$ collide at $\pi(t)$ where $\pi(t-\epsilon)$ has the structure exactly before the event for a sufficiently small $\epsilon>0$.

At a first type event, new fields emerge and at a second type event a field disappears (new fields may appear). Note that the number of such events is $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ and we can obtain $T$ by considering the intersection of each pair of circles (or disks) on $\pi$ and finally sort the times. So, we can compute $T$ (increasingly sorted) in $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$ time. Here, we are going to find an interval $T^{*}=\left(t^{\prime}, t^{\prime \prime}\right) \subseteq I^{*}$ such that $r_{l} \in T^{*}$ and it contains no event-time. To do this, we apply our feasibility test $O(\log n)$ times to perform a binary search on $T$ to get $T^{*}$. So, computing $T^{*}$ again costs $O\left(n \log ^{2} n\right)$ time.

Next, for each field $f \in \pi\left(t \in T^{*}\right)$, we store the set of points not covered by it denoted by $f^{+}$and compute the farthest-point Voronoi diagram $\mathcal{F}\left(f^{+}\right)$of these points. In order to find $r_{l}$, we need to compute $t_{f}^{\delta}$ for each field $f \in \pi\left(t \in T^{*}\right)$ where $t_{f}^{\delta}$ is the earliest time for which $d\left(f \in \pi\left(t_{f}^{\delta}\right), H_{f}^{+}\left(t_{f}^{\delta}\right)\right)=\delta$. Finally, we have $r_{l}=\min \left\{t_{f}^{\delta}: f \in \pi\left(t \in T^{*}\right)\right\}$.

Here, we discuss how to compute $t_{f}^{\delta}$ for a field $f \in \pi\left(t \in T^{*}\right)$. First, we build $\mathcal{F}\left(f^{+}\right)$ in $O(n \log n)$ time. Note that having $\mathcal{F}\left(f^{+}\right)$, for a given $t \in T^{*}$, we can compute $H_{f}^{+}(t)$ with ordered arcs in linear time. Next, we apply binary search on the weights(times) of the vertices of $\mathcal{F}\left(f^{+}\right)$using the algorithm of [20](which costs $O(\log n)$ for computing the distance between two convex objects) as the feasibility test to check whether the distance between $f$ and $H_{f}^{+}$is smaller, equal or larger than $\delta$. Let $T_{f}^{*} \subseteq T^{*}$ be the resulting interval. So, when $t$ varies in $T_{f}^{*}$, no arc appears or vanishes in $H_{f}^{+}(t)$. So, $T_{f}^{*}$ can be computed in $O(n \log n)$ time. Having $T_{f}^{*}$, because we have no structural change in $H_{f}^{+}$, we can compute $t_{f}^{\delta}$ in linear time (by considering the arms of $H_{f}^{+}$). So, the total cost of computing $t_{f}^{\delta}$ is $O(n \log n)$ and thus, $r_{l}$ can be computed in $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$ time. The procedure FIND-RL $(l)$ in Algorithm 10 will return $r_{l}$ given a line $l$.

```
Algorithm 10 FIND-RL \((l)\)
    Build \(\mathcal{F}\left(P^{-}\right)\)and its weights.
    Perform a binary search on the weights using RL-FTEST to get an interval \(I^{*}=\left[i_{0}, i_{1}\right]\).
    Compute the event-times sequence \(T\) when \(\pi(t)\) and \(\mathcal{A}(t)\) expands as \(t \in I^{*}\).
    Perform a binary search on \(T\) using RL-FTEST to get an interval \(T^{*}\).
    Let \(f_{1}, \ldots, f_{m}^{\prime}\) be the fields of \(\pi(t)\) when \(t \in T^{*}\). // The fields are same as \(t\) varies in
    \(T^{*}\).
    for \(i\) from 1 to \(m^{\prime}\) do
        Let \(f^{+}\)be the set of points not covered by \(f_{i}\).
        Compute \(\mathcal{F}\left(f^{+}\right)\)and perform a binary search on its weights with the following test:
        Test \((w)\) :
            Compute \(H_{f_{i}}^{+}(w)\) and let \(d=d\left(f_{i}, H_{f_{i}}^{+}(w)\right)\).
            if \(d>\delta\) then Return Smaller.
            else if \(d=\delta\) then Return Equal else Return Greater.
        Let \(T_{f_{i}}^{*}\) be the final interval. // When \(t\) varies in \(T_{f_{i}}^{*}\) the structure of \(H_{f_{i}}^{+}\)doesn't
    change.
        Compute the time \(t_{i}^{\delta}\) for which \(d\left(f_{i}, H_{f_{i}}^{+}\right)=\delta\).
    end for
    Return \(r_{l}\) as \(\min \left\{t_{i}^{\delta}: 1 \leq i \leq m^{\prime}\right\}\).
```

Having $r^{D A}$, we can obtain a BOS for it as follows: for each $l \in \mathcal{L}_{2}$, we consider two assumptions: first, the determining disk is on the left side of $l$ and second it is on the right side of $l$. For the first case, we consider $H^{-}\left(r^{D A}\right)$ and circles in $\mathcal{A}$ as fixed objects (not propagating) and for each field $f$, we propagate $H_{f}^{+}$up to radius $R^{D A}$ based on the method we explained above and compute the minimum radius(time) for which $d\left(H^{-}\left(r^{D A}\right), H_{f}^{+}\right)=\delta$. Let $r_{l}^{\prime}$ be the minimum such radius and infinite if it doesn't exist. For the second case, we propagate both circles in $\mathcal{A}$ and fields of $H^{-}\left(i_{0}\right)$ to obtain event-times but we build all $H_{f}^{+} \mathrm{s}$ according to the fixed radius $r^{D A}$ and follow the above algorithm to obtain a radius $r_{l}^{\prime \prime}$. Comparing $r_{l}^{\prime}, r_{l}^{\prime \prime}$ and their solutions, we obtain a BOS assuming $l$ is a correct line. Comparing the results for all $l \in \mathcal{L}_{2}$ will give us a $\operatorname{BOS}\left(D_{1}^{D A}, D_{2}^{D A}\right)$ having the distant assumption with total time complexity of $O\left(n^{2} \log n\right)$.

### 5.9 Proof of Theorem 5.1

Lets $x$ and $y$ be two points in the plane. We recall that the directed line passing from $x$ and $y$ directed from $x$ to $y$ is denoted by line $(x, y)$. Also, we denote the half-line from $x$ passing $y$ by half-line $(x, y)$. In this section, when we say first, second, third and fourth quarter of a point $t$ with respect to some directed line $l$ we mean the first, second, third and fourth quarter of the plane when we consider $t$ as the origin and the directed line parallel
to $l$ passing $t$ as the $x$-axis. We prove the theorem by providing several propositions. For simplicity, when we assign a letter to a geometric object inside a proof, the scope of that notation is only inside that proof and we may assign that letter to another object later. In addition, when we state a proposition or observation, we mean if the proposition or observation is false, the statement is either impossible or the theorem follows. So, we can assume that after a proposition or observation, its statement is always true. Also, when we say one disk is smaller than another disk, we mean smaller or equal. Let $c$ be the center of some disk $D$. We say that a set of three points $T$ make a triangle for $c$ if their induced triangle covers $c$ and any disk that covers $T$ has a radius greater than $\operatorname{radius}(D)$.

Observation 5.4. Let $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ be the dominating points of $D_{+}^{i, j}$. Then for any point $t \notin$ $D_{+}^{i, j}$ inside the cone induced by two half-lines from $c_{+}^{i, j}$ along line $\left(d_{1}, c_{+}^{i, j}\right)$ and line $\left(d_{2}, c_{+}^{i, j}\right)$ containing $c_{-}^{i, j}$, the points $d_{1} d_{2}$ t makes a triangle for $c_{+}^{i, j}$.

A similar statement is also true for $D_{-}^{i, j}$ and their dominating points. Figure 5.10 shows an example for Observation 5.4.


Figure 5.10: $d_{1}, d_{2}$ and $x$ make a triangle for $c_{+}^{i, j}$
Let $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$ be a given doubly-marked element. Also, let $M^{+}[\bar{i}, \bar{j}]$ and $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \hat{j}]$ be the elements for which we marked $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$ when we evaluated them in the top-right and bottomleft initial searches respectively. For simplicity of notation, henceforth we denote $D_{+}^{\hat{i}, \bar{j}}, D_{-}^{\hat{i}, \bar{j}}$, $c_{+}^{\hat{i}, \bar{j}}$ and $c_{-}^{\hat{i}, \bar{j}}$ by $D_{+}^{\prime}, D_{-}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}$ and $c_{-}^{\prime}$ respectively. Similarly, we denote $D_{+}^{\bar{i}, \bar{j}}, D_{-}^{\bar{i}, \bar{j}}, c_{+}^{\bar{i}, \bar{j}}, c_{-}^{\bar{i}, \bar{j}}$ by $\bar{D}_{+}, \bar{D}_{-}, \bar{c}_{+}, \bar{c}_{-}$and $D_{+}^{\hat{i}, \hat{j}}, D_{-}^{\hat{i}, \hat{j}}, c_{+}^{\hat{i}, \hat{j}}, c_{-}^{\hat{i}, \hat{j}}$ by $\hat{D}_{+}, \hat{D}_{-}, \hat{c}_{+}, \hat{c}_{-}$respectively. Note that based on our assumptions all of these disks has exactly two dominating points.

We denote the dominating points of $\bar{D}_{+}$by $a$ and $b, \bar{D}_{-}$by $x$ and $y, \hat{D}_{+}$by $c$ and $d$, $\hat{D}_{-}$by $w$ and $u, D_{+}^{\prime}$ by $h_{1}$ and $h_{2}$ and finally $D_{-}^{\prime}$ by $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$. Let $a$ and $c$ be the two dominating points of $\bar{D}_{+}$and $\hat{D}_{+}$who lie on the opposite side of $x$ and $w$ with respect to line $\left(\bar{c}_{-}, \bar{c}_{+}\right)$and line $\left(\hat{c}_{-}, \hat{c}_{+}\right)$respectively. Note that $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ should be in both $P_{-}^{\bar{i}, \bar{j}}$ and $P_{-}^{\hat{i}, \hat{j}}$ (because if they are in the positive side, they can't be dominating points of $D_{-}^{\prime}$ ). $a, b, c$ and $d$ are in $P_{+}^{\hat{i}, \bar{j}}$ and so covered by $D_{+}^{\prime}$ (because we only add points to the positive side
when we walk on $M^{+}$from left to right or top to bottom). Also, suppose that $x$ and $w$ are the dominating points of $\bar{D}_{-}$and $\hat{D}_{-}$respectively who are moved to the positive side in the $(\hat{i}, \bar{j})$-partition. So, we can assume that $y$ and $u$ are not in $P_{+}^{\hat{i}, \bar{j}}$. This is because if for example $y \in P_{+}^{\hat{i}, \bar{j}}, D_{+}^{\prime}$ should cover $a, b, x$ and $y$ which are the all dominating points in the pair $\left(\bar{D}_{-}, \bar{D}_{+}\right)$. This means that the radius of $D_{+}^{\prime}$ and any positive disk of $\left(i^{\prime}, j^{\prime}\right)$-partition with $i^{\prime} \geq \hat{i}$ and $j^{\prime} \geq \bar{j}$ is greater than the radius of $\bar{D}_{-}$and so, we can discard them and the theorem follows (cases 2 and 3 in the theorem). Note that $x$ is $p$-type and $w$ is $q$-type (because $x$ (resp. $w$ ) is moved to the positive side when we walk on a column (resp. row) of $M^{+}$) also $y, u$ should be covered by $D_{-}^{\prime}$. Furthermore, $x \in P_{+}^{\hat{i}, \hat{j}}$ because $x$ is $p$-type and if $x \in P_{-}^{\hat{i}, \hat{j}}$, we can not bring it into the positive side in the $(\hat{i}, \bar{j})$-partition by walking on the $\hat{i}^{\text {th }}$-row. Similarly, $w \in P_{+}^{\bar{i}, \bar{j}}$. We assume that $u$ is covered by $\bar{D}_{-}$because if $u \in P_{+}^{\bar{i}, \bar{j}}$, then $u$ should also be in $P_{+}^{\hat{i}, \bar{j}}$ which means $D_{+}^{\prime}$ would cover $c, d, w, u$ and the theorem follows. Similarly, $y$ should be covered by $\hat{D}_{-}$. Note that the intersection of the disks are non-empty because we are in the nearby case. So, we can consider a point inside the intersection of the disks and have an angular clockwise and counter-clockwise order for all the dominating and intersection points of the disks. We consider two cases for $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$ and prove the theorem for each case separately.

Case 1: $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]>\max \left\{M^{+}[\bar{i}, \bar{j}], M^{+}[\hat{i}, \hat{j}]\right\}$
According to Proposition 5.5 part 2, both $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ can't be on $D_{+}^{\prime}$. Let $h_{1}^{\prime}$ be the one outside $D_{+}^{\prime}$ (the case $h_{2}^{\prime}$ is outside $D_{+}^{\prime}$ is similar). We show that $h_{1}^{\prime} h_{1} h_{2}$ makes a triangle for $c_{+}^{\prime}$. Suppose not. Based on Observation 5.4, for one of $h_{1}$ or $h_{2}$ namely $h_{2}, h_{1}^{\prime}$ should be on the opposite side of $h_{2}$ with respect to $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{-}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ (see Figure 5.11). Also, $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $c_{-}^{\prime}$ should lie on opposite sides of line $\left(h_{2}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$. Note that $h_{2}$ should lie outside of $D_{-}^{\prime}$ otherwise, we can't place $h_{1}^{\prime}$ having these conditions.

Without loss of generality, we assume that $h_{1}$ is $p$-type (the case $h_{1}$ is $q$-type is similar). Because $h_{1}$ is $p$-type, $h_{1} \in \hat{D}_{+}$(if $h_{1}$ was $q$-type, we would have $h_{1} \in \bar{D}_{+}$). This is because when we traverse on a row, we only move $q$-type points to the positive side. On the other hand, both $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ should be covered by $\hat{D}_{-}$. Based on this situation, we have two subcases:
sub-case 1: $h_{2} \in \hat{D}_{+}$. In this sub-case, because $\left\{h_{1}^{\prime}, h_{2}^{\prime}\right\} \in \hat{D}_{-}$and $\left\{h_{1}, h_{2}\right\} \in \hat{D}_{+}, M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$ can't be greater than $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \hat{j}]$ which is contradiction.
sub-case 2: $h_{2} \in \hat{D}_{-}$. Let $t$ be the intersection point of $h a l f$-line $\left(h_{2}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ and $D_{+}^{\prime}$ (see Figure 5.11). Note that $\hat{D}_{-}$covers $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and it can not cover $t$ (because it is smaller). So, $\hat{c}_{-}$ should lie on the side of $\operatorname{line}\left(h_{2}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ that has $h_{1}^{\prime}$. Also, $\hat{D}_{-}$covers all points of $P_{-}^{\hat{i}, \bar{j}}$. Now, $h_{1}^{\prime}$ should be on the third quarter of $c_{+}^{\prime}$ with respect to $\operatorname{line}\left(h_{2}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$. This is because $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is outside $D_{+}^{\prime}$ ( the way we chose $h_{1}^{\prime}$ ) and $h_{2}$ is on the opposite side of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{-}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ with respect
to $h_{1}^{\prime}$. Also, $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ are on opposite sides of line $\left(h_{2}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ (because of Proposition 5.5). Now, for any point $z$ inside $\hat{D}_{-}$, if $h_{1}^{\prime} z$ intersects the half-line $\left(c_{-}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$, it can't be $h_{2}^{\prime}$ (again Proposition 5.5 second part) and if it doesn't, $\left|z c_{-}^{\prime}\right|<\left|h_{1}^{\prime} c_{-}^{\prime}\right|=M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$ which again means that $z$ can't be $h_{2}^{\prime}$. So, we don't have any place for $h_{2}^{\prime}$ which is contradiction (see Figure 5.11).


Figure 5.11: Proof of Sub-case 2 in Case 1.

Case 2: $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}] \leq \max \left\{M^{+}[\bar{i}, \bar{j}], M^{+}[\hat{i}, \hat{j}]\right\}$
In this section, we assume that $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}] \leq M^{+}[\bar{i}, \bar{j}]$ and the case $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}] \leq M^{+}[\hat{i}, \hat{j}]$ is similar. Henceforth, we consider $\operatorname{line}\left(\bar{c}_{-}, \bar{c}_{+}\right)$as the $x$-axis unless we say otherwise. We consider two sub-cases based on the position of $x$ with respect to $\bar{D}_{+}$. For simplicity, when we provide a proposition within each case or sub-case, we include the assumptions of the case or sub-case in the proposition.

Sub-case 1: $\mathrm{x} \notin \overline{\mathbf{D}}_{+}$.

In this sub-case, we assume that $x$ is below $\operatorname{line}\left(\bar{c}_{-}, \bar{c}_{+}\right)$and the case $x$ is above the line is similar.

Proposition 5.8. $c_{+}^{\prime}$ should be on the lower-right of $\bar{c}_{+}$.
Proof. $D_{+}^{\prime}$ should cover $a, b$ and $x$. Based on Proposition 5.5, $a$ and $b$ should be on different sides of line $\left(\bar{c}_{-}, \bar{c}_{+}\right)$and $a$ should be on the first quarter with respect to $\bar{c}_{+}$and thus, outside of $\bar{D}_{-}$(otherwise, because of Proposition 5.5 part $2, b$ should be on the right side of $\bar{c}_{+}$. Now, $x \notin \bar{D}_{+}$and $D_{+}^{\prime}$ should contain the triangle $\triangle a b x$ which contradicts $D_{+}^{\prime}$ is smaller than $\bar{D}_{+}$). If $c_{+}^{\prime}$ is on the lower-left of $\bar{c}_{+}, D_{+}^{\prime}$ can't cover $a$ while it is smaller than $\bar{D}_{+}$. If $c_{+}^{\prime}$ is on the top-left of $\bar{c}_{+}$, it should be above line $\left(a, \bar{c}_{+}\right)$and $b$ should be below this line on $\partial \bar{D}_{+}$. This implies that $D_{+}^{\prime}$ can't cover $a, b$ and $x$ while being smaller than $\bar{D}_{+}$ (see Figure 5.12 for such situation). If $c_{+}^{\prime}$ is on top-right $\bar{c}_{+}$, its distance from $x$ would be
greater than the radius of $\bar{D}_{+}$which is again not possible.


Figure 5.12: Proof of Proposition 5.8.

An immediate corollary of the above proposition is that $c_{-}^{\prime}$ can't be on the lower-left of $c_{+}^{\prime}$ otherwise, given the fact that $y$ is above $\operatorname{line}\left(\bar{c}_{-}, \bar{c}_{+}\right)$and $y \notin D_{+}^{\prime}$ (otherwise $D_{+}^{\prime}$ would have $a, b, x, y$ which are all dominating points of $\bar{D}_{-}$and $\bar{D}_{+}$and so can't be the smaller disk) $D_{-}^{\prime}$ can't cover $y$.

Observation 5.5. $x$ and $\bar{c}_{-}$should lie on different sides of line $\left(a, \bar{c}_{+}\right)$.
The reason for the above observation is that because $a \notin \bar{D}_{-}$and $x$ is below line $\left(\bar{c}_{+}, \bar{c}_{-}\right)$, if $x$ lies on the right side of line $\left(a, \bar{c}_{+}\right)$, axb would be a triangle for $\bar{c}_{+}$which contradicts the assumption that $D_{+}^{\prime}$ is smaller than $\bar{D}_{+}$. Also, xa can't intersect half-line $\left(\bar{c}_{+}, \bar{c}_{-}\right)$otherwise, $a b x$ is a triangle for $\bar{c}_{+}$and again contradicts that $\bar{D}_{+}$is the smaller disk. Henceforth, we denote the upper and lower intersection points of $\partial \bar{D}_{-}$and $\partial \bar{D}_{+}$by $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ respectively. Also, let $o$ be the mid-point of $\bar{c}_{-} \bar{c}_{+}$and $I_{3}$ be the intersection of half-line $\left(\bar{c}_{-}, \bar{c}_{+}\right)$and $\partial \bar{D}_{+}$.

Proposition 5.9. $c_{-}^{\prime}$ can't be on the right side of $c_{+}^{\prime}$.
Proof. Suppose not and $c_{-}^{\prime}$ is on the right side of $c_{+}^{\prime}$. First note that $c_{-}^{\prime}$ can't be on the lower-right of $c_{+}^{\prime}$ otherwise $D_{+}^{\prime} \cup D_{-}^{\prime}$ can't cover both $y$ and $x$ while they are smaller (because of Proposition 5.5 part 2 between $x$ and $y$ ). So, suppose that $c_{-}^{\prime}$ lies on the topright of $c_{+}^{\prime}$. First note that $h_{2}^{\prime}$ can't be above $\operatorname{line}\left(\bar{c}_{+}, \bar{c}_{-}\right)$. To see why, let $\epsilon$ be the difference of the $x$-coordinates of $c_{+}^{\prime}$ and $c_{-}^{\prime}$. Also let $h$ be minimum difference of the $y$-coordinates of $c_{-}^{\prime}$ and $c_{+}^{\prime}$ in order to have $h_{2}^{\prime}$ above $\operatorname{line}\left(\bar{c}_{+}, \bar{c}_{-}\right)$. In order to keep the PCC, we need to have $h<\sqrt{\delta^{2}-\epsilon^{2}}$ but $h \geq \sqrt{r^{2}-(r-\delta-\epsilon)^{2}}$ (just assume that $c_{+}^{\prime}$ lies on line $\left(\bar{c}_{+}, \bar{c}_{-}\right)$and use the fact that $D_{+}^{\prime}$ should cover $I_{3}$ to get the bound) which is not possible. On the other hand, $h_{1}^{\prime}$ should come after $y$ in the counter-clockwise order because $D_{-}^{\prime}$ needs to cover $y$. So, by adding $h_{1}^{\prime}$ to the positive side, any disk covering $x, a, h_{1}^{\prime}$ should also cover $h_{2}^{\prime}$ which
means its radius is bigger than $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$ and so we can discard based on Theorem 5.1 (see Figure 5.13).


Figure 5.13: Proof of Proposition 5.9. The positions of $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ with respect to $c_{-}^{\prime}$ (note that we relaxed the condition that $y$ should be covered by $D_{-}^{\prime}$ to make the figure clear)

We know that $y \notin D_{+}^{\prime}$. This is because if $y \in D_{+}^{\prime}, D_{+}^{\prime}$ would have $a, b, x, y$ which are the all dominating points of the solution of $M^{+}[\bar{i}, \bar{j}]$ and so can't be the smaller disk. On the other hand, both $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ should be in $\bar{D}_{-}$. Let $h_{1}^{\prime}$ be the first dominating point after $y$ in the counter-clockwise order. We recall that $h_{1}^{\prime}$ should be outside $D_{+}^{\prime}$ (otherwise, it contradicts Proposition 5.5). From Proposition 5.9, we know that $c_{-}^{\prime}$ is on the left side of $c_{+}^{\prime}$. Also, note that $c_{-}^{\prime}$ can't be below $c_{+}^{\prime}$ otherwise $D_{-}^{\prime}$ can't cover $y$ (consider Proposition 5.5 between $x$ and $y$ ). So, the intersection point of half-line ( $c_{-}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}$ ) and $\partial D_{+}^{\prime}$ should lie on the forth quarter with respect to $o$. This implies that one dominating point of $D_{+}^{\prime}$ namely $h_{1}$ lies after $a$ in the angular counter-clockwise order and the other $h_{2}$ before $x$.

We consider two cases. First, assume that $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the right side of line $\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$. In this configuration, because $c_{+}^{\prime}$ is on the lower-right of $\bar{c}_{+}$and Proposition 5.5 for $x$ and $y$, after adding $h_{1}^{\prime}$ to the positive side, we always have $\triangle h_{1} h_{2} h_{1}^{\prime}$ around $c_{+}^{\prime}$ and so we can discard (see Figure 5.14 (a)). Now, assume that $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the left side of line $\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$. In this case, because $a$ is above $\bar{c}_{+}$and $h_{1}$ is after $a$ in the order, the intersection of half-line $\left(h_{1}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ and $D_{-}^{\prime}$ should be below $c_{+}^{\prime}$. Now, if $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is above $c_{+}^{\prime}$, we again have triangle $\triangle h_{1}^{\prime} h_{1} h_{2}$ for $c_{+}^{\prime}$ and thus we can discard. Otherwise, half-line $\left(h_{1}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$ should intersect $\partial D_{-}^{\prime}$ inside $\bar{D}_{-}$ (otherwise there is no place for $h_{2}^{\prime}$ ). Now, let $t$ be the point on $\partial D_{-}^{\prime}$ with same $y$-coordinate as $c_{-}^{\prime}$ on the left side of it (see Figure 5.14 (b)). Because $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is below $c_{-}^{\prime}, t$ should lie inside $D_{-}^{\prime}$ but in order to have this condition $d\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$ should be greater than $\delta$ which is not possible.


Figure 5.14: (a) $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the right side of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$. (b) when $t$ is inside $\bar{D}_{-}, d\left(c_{-}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ is greater than $\delta$.
$\underline{\text { Sub-case 2: } x \in \overline{\mathbf{D}}_{+}}$

In this sub-case, because $x \in \bar{D}_{+}, y$ is outside of $\bar{D}_{+}$and left side of $\bar{c}_{-}$and indeed on дconvex-hull $(P)$. Similar to the previous sub-section, let $h_{1}^{\prime}$ be the first dominating point of $D_{-}^{\prime}$ that appear after $y$ in the counter-clockwise order which is outside $D_{+}^{\prime}$.

Observation 5.6. $c_{+}^{\prime}$ lies on the right side of $\bar{c}_{+}$.
This is because if $c_{+}^{\prime}$ is on the left side of $\bar{c}_{+}$, there would be no place for $a$ and $b$ such that $a b$ does not intersect the half-line $\left(\bar{c}_{+}, \bar{c}_{-}\right)$while keeping $D_{+}^{\prime}$ the smaller disk. Similar to Proposition 5.9 we can assume that $c_{-}^{\prime}$ is on the left side of $c_{+}^{\prime}$ otherwise $h_{2}^{\prime}$ is covered by any disk covering $a, b$ and $x$. Now, let $z_{1}$ and $z_{2}$ be the two intersection points of $\partial D_{-}^{\prime}$ and $\partial D_{+}^{\prime}$ where $z_{1}$ appears first in the counter-clockwise order from $y$. Also, let $R\left(z_{1}\right)$ and $R\left(z_{2}\right)$ be the portions of $\partial D_{-}^{\prime}$ between two perpendicular lines from $c_{-}^{\prime}$ and $c_{+}^{\prime}$ on $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{-}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ around $z_{1}$ and $z_{2}$ respectively (see Figure 5.15).

Proposition 5.10. $h_{1}^{\prime}$ does not intersect $R\left(z_{1}\right)$ and $R\left(z_{2}\right)$.
Proof. We first show that $h_{1}^{\prime}$ does not intersect $R\left(z_{2}\right)$. We proceed by contradiction and suppose that $h_{1}^{\prime} \in R\left(z_{2}\right)$. Let $t_{1}$ be the intersection point of $\partial \bar{D}_{-}$and $\bar{D}_{-}^{\prime}$ which comes first after $y$. In this situation, $t_{1}$ should also be in $R\left(z_{2}\right)$. Also, let $t_{2}$ be the first intersection point of the half-line passing from $t_{1}$ parallel to $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{-}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ and $\partial D_{+}^{\prime}$ (see Fig 5.15 (a)). Now, $t_{2}$ is outside $\bar{D}_{-}$because $t_{2} \in R\left(z_{1}\right)$ and the positive slope of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{-}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ (in order to have have $t_{1}$ inside $\left.R\left(z_{2}\right)\right)$. On the other hand, $D_{+}^{\prime}$ has both $t_{2}$ and $x$. If $t_{2} x$ intersect the half-line $\left(\bar{c}_{-}, \bar{c}_{+}\right),\left|t_{2} x\right|$ should be greater than $M^{+}[\bar{i}, \bar{j}]$ which is contradiction. Otherwise, $D_{+}^{\prime}$ should have $a, b, x, t_{2}$ which again make it bigger than $M^{+}[\bar{i}, \bar{j}]$ (consider a pair of disks with centers $\bar{c}_{+}$and $\bar{c}_{-}$and dominating points $\{a, b\}$ and $\left\{x, t_{2}\right\}$ respectively).

Now, we prove that $h_{1}^{\prime}$ can't intersect $R\left(z_{1}\right)$. Let $q$ be the last point of $R\left(z_{2}\right)$ in the counter-clockwise order (see Figure 5.15 (b)).


Figure 5.15: An example of configuration of points for Proposition 5.10. Note that in this figure, we relaxed the condition that $x$ should be covered by $D_{+}^{\prime}$ in order to illustrate situations where $h_{1}^{\prime}$ lies inside $R\left(z_{1}\right)$ and $R\left(z_{2}\right)$.

If $h_{1}^{\prime}$ lies on $R\left(z_{1}\right), h_{2}^{\prime}$ needs to lie between $q$ and $\bar{D}_{-}$on $\partial D_{-}^{\prime}$ in order to not intersect half-line $\left(c_{-}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$. But, $q$ is outside $\bar{D}_{-}$because the right intersection point $t$ of $\bar{D}_{-}$and $D_{-}^{\prime}$ is below $c_{-}^{\prime}$ (this is because the PCC. Specifically, if $\zeta$ is the difference between the radii of $D_{-}^{\prime}$ and $\bar{D}_{-}, c_{+}^{\prime}$ should lie at least $\zeta$ to the right of $\bar{c}_{+}$to cover $a$ and $b$. This implies that $c_{-}^{\prime}$ should also lie at least $\zeta$ to the right of $c_{-}^{\prime}$ to keep the PCC which make $t$ below $c_{-}^{\prime}$ ) there is no place for $h_{2}^{\prime}$ inside $\bar{D}$ - which is contradiction.

Consider an $(i, j)$-partition. Let us call the (convex) cone obtained by $m$ as its vertex and the separator half-lines from $m$ as its sides the $(i, j)$-cone. If the positive direction of the $m$-line is in the cone, we say the cone is positive otherwise we say it is negative. We say two points $z_{1}, z_{2}$ in $P_{-}^{i, j}$ (resp. $P_{+}^{i, j}$ ) make a cut for $z_{3} \in P_{+}^{i, j}$ (resp. $z_{3} \in P_{-}^{i, j}$ ) in a positive (resp. negative) $(i, j)$-cone, if $z_{1} z_{2}$ intersects both the sides of the cone and does not separate $z_{3}$ from $m$ in the cone. See Figure 5.16 for an example of a cone and a cut for it.

Observation 5.7. If two point $z_{1}$ and $z_{2}$ in $P_{+}^{i, j}$ (resp. $P_{-}^{i, j}$ ) make a cut for a point $z_{3}$ in $P_{-}^{i, j}$ (resp. $P_{+}^{i, j}$ ) in a negative (resp. positive) $(i, j)$-cone, then if $z_{3}$ is not covered by convex-hull $\left(P_{+}^{i, j}\right)\left(\right.$ resp. convex-hull $\left(P_{-}^{i, j}\right)$, then $m$ can not be covered by convex-hull $(P)$.

The reason of the above observation is that if $z_{3}$ is not covered by convex-hull $\left(P_{-}^{i, j}\right)$, there is a line that separates this convex hull and $m$. Now, by adding the points inside the cone to the convex hull, we just move this separating line closer to $m$ but this line can never


Figure 5.16: A negative cone. $z_{1}, z_{2}$ make a cut for $z_{3}$.
reach $m$.

In order to discard a sub-row or a sub-column of $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$ according to Theorem 5.1, we need to consider different configurations of the points in the $(\hat{i}, \bar{j})$-partition. Because $x$ can be above or below $\operatorname{line}\left(\bar{c}_{-}, \bar{c}_{+}\right)$, in order to cover these cases, we can assume that $x$ is below line $\left(\bar{c}_{-}, \bar{c}_{+}\right)$but the $m$-line can take the both possible directions. Let $h_{1}$ be the dominating point of $D_{+}^{\prime}$ on the right side of line $\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$ and $h_{2}$ be the other one. We proceed the following cases based on the position of the $m$-line with respect to $y$ and $h_{1}^{\prime}$ :

1) Both $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $y$ are on the left side of the $m$-line: Based on Proposition 5.10, $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the boundary of convex-hull $\left(D_{-}^{\prime} \cup D_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ and because $x \in \bar{D}_{+}, y$ is also on the boundary of convex-hull $\left(\bar{D}_{-} \cup \bar{D}_{+}\right)$. Now, because all points in $P$ are covered by the two convex hulls, both $y$ and $h_{1}^{\prime}$ are on the boundary of convex-hull $(P)$. So, if $y$ and $h_{1}^{\prime}$ are on the left side of the $m$-line, because $m \in \operatorname{convex-hull}(P)$ and $h_{1}^{\prime}, h_{2}^{\prime}$ has different types (and so the $m$-line should pass between $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ ), when we add $h_{1}^{\prime}$ to the positive side, we first need to add $y$ to the positive side and then $h_{1}^{\prime}$ (see Figure 5.17). Which means that after adding $h_{1}^{\prime}$, the positive side has $a, b, x, y$ which are the all dominating points of $\bar{D}_{-}$and $\bar{D}_{+}$. This implies that any covering disk of them should have a radius greater than $M^{+}[\bar{i}, \bar{j}]$ and so, we can discard the rest of the row or column of $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$ based on the type of $h_{1}^{\prime}$.
2) $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $y$ are on the left and right sides of the m-line respectively: Based on Proposition 5.10 both $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $y$ are on the convex hull of the points. Now, one of $a$ or $b$ should also be on convex-hull $(P)$ which means it is not possible to add both of them to the positive side before either adding $y$ or $h_{1}^{\prime}$ to the positive side which is not possible.
3) $\mathbf{h}_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the right side of the $\mathbf{m}$-line: we consider two cases: first, suppose that $h_{1}^{\prime}$ lies on the right side of line $\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$. Now, if $h_{2}$ also lies on the right side of line $\left(h_{1}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$, then adding $h_{1}^{\prime}$ makes a triangle $\triangle h_{1}^{\prime} h_{1} h_{2}$ and we are done. Otherwise, $h_{2}$ should be on dconvex-hull $\left(D_{-}^{\prime} \cup D_{+}^{\prime}\right)$ (because of Proposition 5.10) and so the points $h_{1}^{\prime}, y$ and $h_{2}$ is on


Figure 5.17: In order to add $h_{1}^{\prime}$ to the positive side, we first need to add $y$ to the positive side.
dconvex-hull $(P)$. Now, if $h_{2}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ has different types, $h_{2}$ and $h_{1}^{\prime}$ should have a same type (because $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}^{\prime}$ had different types based on our assumption) and so on a same side of the $m$-line. In this case, because $y$ lies on the right side of line $\left(h_{2}, h_{1}^{\prime}\right)$ and both $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}$ lie on the right side of the $m$-line, and also because $h_{2}^{\prime}$ should lie on the left side of the $m$-line, $y$ should also lie on the right side of the $m$-line. In this situation in order to add $h_{2}$ to the positive side, we need to add $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $y$ to the positive side first which is not possible. This argument implies that $h_{2}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}$ have a same type. Because $h_{2}$ needs to be added to the positive side before $h_{2}^{\prime}, m$ should be on the left side of line $\left(h_{2}, h_{2}^{\prime}\right)$ but in this situation, after adding $h_{1}^{\prime}$ to the positive side, we would have negative cone $h_{1}^{\prime} m h_{2}$ and $h_{1}^{\prime} h_{2}$ makes a cut for $h_{2}^{\prime}\left(h_{2}^{\prime}\right.$ lies on the right side of line $\left(h_{1}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$ to satisfy Proposition 5.5) which implies that any disk covering $h_{1}^{\prime}$ and $h_{2}$ should also cover $h_{2}^{\prime}$ and we can discard (see Figure 5.18 (a)).

(a)

(b)

Figure 5.18: $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the right side of the $m$-line. (a) $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the right side of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$. (b) $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the left side of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$.

Now, suppose that $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is on the left side of $\operatorname{line}\left(c_{+}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$. Again, if $h_{1}$ is on the left side of line $\left(h_{1}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$, adding $h_{1}^{\prime}$ makes triangle $\triangle h_{1}^{\prime} h_{1} h_{2}$ and we can discard. So, we assume that $h_{1}$ is on the right side of $\operatorname{line}\left(h_{1}^{\prime}, c_{+}^{\prime}\right)$. Note that here $h_{2}^{\prime}$ can't lie above $c_{-}^{\prime}$ because of PCC (similar to the argument of point $t$ in the proof of Proposition 5.10 ) which implies $c_{-}^{\prime}$ is above $c_{+}^{\prime}$ (otherwise, there is no place for $h_{2}^{\prime}$ ). Now, if $a \in \bar{D}_{-}$, by adding $h_{1}^{\prime}$ to the positive side, any disk smaller than $\bar{D}_{+}$covering $h_{1}, a$ and $h_{1}^{\prime}$ should also cover $h_{2}^{\prime}$. This is because $h_{2}^{\prime}$ is on the left side of $\operatorname{line}\left(h_{1}^{\prime}, c_{-}^{\prime}\right)$ and the portion of the disk in the first quarter of $o$ is outside of $\bar{D}_{+}$(in order to cover $a$ ) and so we can discard. Let us assume that $a \notin \bar{D}_{-}$and so it lies on $\partial$ convex-hull $(P)$. On the other hand, because $h_{1}$ is inside $\bar{D}_{+}, b$ should also lie on convex-hull $(P)$ (see Figure $5.18(\mathrm{~b})$ ). Now, if $b$ is on the left side of $\operatorname{line}\left(y, \bar{c}_{-}\right), x$ and $y$ make triangle for $\bar{c}_{-}$with both $a, b$ (because $x \in \bar{D}_{+}$) and so, we could discard in the initial search. But if $b$ lies on the right side of $\operatorname{line}\left(y, \bar{c}_{-}\right)$, because $h_{1}^{\prime}$ is after $y$ in the counter-clockwise order, it is not possible to cover three points $h_{1}^{\prime}, a, b$ with a radius smaller than $M^{+}[\hat{i}, \bar{j}]$ and so again we can discard.

## Chapter 6

## Conclusion and Future Works

In this thesis, we studied several center location problems for which we have extra conditions on the location of the centers. In the first part, we studied two problems: finding beacon kernel points in simple polygons and the particle transmitting problem in polygonal domains. In both of these problems, we need to consider the structures of the underlying space (the given polygonal region) for establishing a beacon/repulsor. We provided the first sub-quadratic time algorithm for the discrete beacon kernel problem and used this algorithm to obtain the beacon kernel points on the boundary of simple polygons. Also, we showed that the particle transmitting problem can be solved in polynomial time. Regarding the beacon kernel problem, a natural generalization of the discrete beacon kernel problem is when we replace the given set of point $\mathcal{X}$ by a given set of arbitrary line segments or half-lines $\mathcal{S}$ (they may not completely lie inside the given polygon). In this generalization, the objective is computing the kernel segments of each segment or half-line $S \in \mathcal{S}$ that is the maximal segments in $S \cap \operatorname{Ker}(P)$. Here, we show if we can solve this generalization in sub-quadratic time, we also can solve the beacon kernel problem in sub-quadratic time. First, note that each edge of $\partial \operatorname{Ker}(P)$ is a subset of either an edge of $\partial P$ or an extension of a reflex vertex in $\mathcal{R}$ (see Proposition 2.3). Therefore, if we consider $\mathcal{S}_{1}$ as the set of extensions of $\mathcal{R}$ and compute the set $\mathcal{S}_{1}^{\prime}$ of its kernel segments, each edge of $\partial \operatorname{Ker}(P)$ would be a segment in $\mathcal{S}^{\prime}$. A key point here is that two segments $s_{1}, s_{2} \in \mathcal{S}_{1}$ can not intersect themselves on their interior. This is because for $s_{1}$ (resp. $s_{2}$ ), the portion of the segment in one side of the intersection lies in the dead wedge of the vertex that generated $s_{2}$ (resp. $s_{1}$ ). So, the intersection points of the segments in $\mathcal{S}_{1}^{\prime}$ are those vertices of $\partial \operatorname{Ker}(P)$ not incident to an edge in $\partial P$. In addition, consider $\mathcal{S}_{2}$ as the set of edges in $\partial P$ and compute its kernel segments $\mathcal{S}_{2}^{\prime}$ (note that each edge has at most one kernel segment). In [11], Biro proved that the complexity of the beacon kernel of a simple polygon is linear. So, by computing the intersection points of the segments in $\mathcal{S}_{1}^{\prime} \cup \mathcal{S}_{2}^{\prime}$ (by using the sweep-plane algorithm [63]) we can get the vertices of $\partial \operatorname{Ker}(P)$ and thus $\operatorname{Ker}(P)$ itself.

In the transmitting particle problem, we were interested in transmitting particles to the target point by using only one repulsor. Similar to the concept of routing by a sequence of
beacons, we can define routing by a sequence of repulsors as follows: for a pair of points $(p, t)$ in a polygonal region, we say $p$ can be routed by sequence $\left(r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots, r_{k}\right)$ of $k$ repulsors to $t$ via targets $\left(p=t_{1}, \ldots, t_{k+1}=t\right)$ if for each $1 \leq i \leq k, r_{i}$ sends $t_{i}$ to $t_{i+1}$. Thus, a generalization of the particle transmitting problem is determining the points in the given polygonal domain that can be send to a target point by a sequence of $k$ repulsors.

In the second part, we first studied the PCkCP on paths in both weighted and unweighted case. A direct generalization of this problem is considering the PCkCP on trees. Its is straightforward to see that the greedy approach for the feasibility test is still works for trees. The potential strategy to get a sub-quadratic time algorithm for the PCkCP on trees (in both weighted and unweighted case) is first considering the problem for stems [66]. Each stem is a path called the backbone of the stem and a set of edges hanging from it. Next follow the approach of [28] to get the stem decomposition of the given tree and recursively process the stems from the leafs of the tree and replace each processed stem by an edge to form new stems to get a sub-quadratic time algorithm to solve the PCkCP on trees.

Lastly, we studied the proximity constrained 2-center as an special case of the PCkCP in the plane. One direct generalization is considering the weighted case problem of PCTCP as we defined the weighted distance in Chapter 4. In this problem, each of the demand points have a positive weight and the problem is computing two centers satisfying PCC that minimize the maximum of the weighted distance of a demand point to its closest center. If we consider the general PCkCP in the plane, we see that if $\delta$ tends to zero, the problem turns to the minimum enclosing disk problem which can be solved in linear time [51]. If $\delta$ tends to infinity, the problem turns to the unconstrained $k$-center problem which we know it is NP-hard and can not be approximated by a ratio better than two. Also, if both $k$ goes to infinity and $\delta$ goes to zero, the problem turns to the Euclidean Steiner tree problem which has a PTAS approximation algorithm. Therefore, an interesting future work is determining the hardness of approximation algorithm for the PCkCP in the plane when $k$ and $\delta$ are not such extreme values.

## Bibliography

[1] Agarwal PK, Procopiuc CM. Exact and approximation algorithms for clustering. Algorithmica. 2002 Jun 1;33(2):201-26
[2] Agarwal PK, Sharir M. Planar geometric location problems. Algorithmica. 1994 Feb;11(2):185-95.
[3] Agarwal PK, Sharir M. Efficient algorithms for geometric optimization. ACM Computing Surveys (CSUR). 1998 Dec 1;30(4):412-58.
[4] Ahlberg M, Vlassov V, Yasui T. Router placement in wireless sensor networks. In 2006 IEEE International Conference on Mobile Ad Hoc and Sensor Systems 2006 Oct 9 (pp. 538-541). IEEE.
[5] Al-Karaki JN, Kamal AE. Routing techniques in wireless sensor networks: a survey. IEEE wireless communications. 2004 Dec 20;11(6):6-28.
[6] Arora S. Nearly linear time approximation schemes for Euclidean TSP and other geometric problems. In Proceedings 38th Annual Symposium on Foundations of Computer Science 1997 Oct 20 (pp. 554-563). IEEE.
[7] Bae SW, Shin CS, Vigneron A. Tight bounds for beacon-based coverage in simple rectilinear polygons. Computational Geometry. 2019 Jul 1;80:40-52.
[8] Barilan J, Kortsarz G, Peleg D. How to allocate network centers. Journal of Algorithms. 1993 Nov 1;15(3):385-415.
[9] Bhattacharya B, Mozafari A, Shermer TC. An efficient algorithm for the proximity connected two center problem. In International Workshop on Combinatorial Algorithms 2022 (pp. 199-213). Springer, Cham.
[10] Bhattacharya B, Kameda T, Mozafari A. A Sub-quadratic Time Algorithm for the Proximity Connected k-center Problem on Paths via Modular Arithmetic. 34th Canadian Conference on Computational Geometry, 2022
[11] Biro M. Beacon-based routing and guarding (Doctoral dissertation, State University of New York at Stony Brook).
[12] Biro M, Gao J, Iwerks J, Kostitsyna I, Mitchell JS. Beacon-based routing and coverage. In 21st Fall Workshop on Computational Geometry (FWCG 2011) 2011 Nov 4.
[13] Biro M, Iwerks J, Kostitsyna I, Mitchell JS. Beacon-based algorithms for geometric routing. In Workshop on Algorithms and Data Structures 2013 Aug 12 (pp. 158-169). Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg.
[14] Biro M, Gao J, Iwerks J, Kostitsyna I, Mitchell JS. Combinatorics of beacon-based routing and coverage. 25th Canadian Conference on Computational Geometry, 2013
[15] Bose P, Shermer TC. Attraction-convexity and normal visibility. Computational Geometry. 2021 Jun 1;96:101748.
[16] Bose P, Shermer TC. Gathering by repulsion. Computational Geometry. 2020 Oct 1;90:101627.
[17] Chan TM. More planar two-center algorithms. Computational Geometry. 1999 Sep 1;13(3):189-98.
[18] Chazelle B. Triangulating a simple polygon in linear time. Discrete and Computational Geometry. 1991 Sep;6(3):485-524.
[19] Chazelle B, Edelsbrunner H, Grigni M, Guibas L, Hershberger J, Sharir M, Snoeyink J. Ray shooting in polygons using geodesic triangulations. Algorithmica. 1994 Jul;12(1):5468.
[20] Chin F. Optimal algorithms for the intersection and the minimum distance problems between planar polygons. IEEE Transactions on Computers. 1983 Dec 1(12):1203-7.
[21] Cho K, Oh E. Optimal algorithm for the planar two-center problem. arXiv preprint arXiv:2007.08784. 2020 Jul 17
[22] Choi J, Ahn HK. Efficient planar two-center algorithms. Computational Geometry. 2021 Apr 2:101768.
[23] Cole R. Slowing down sorting networks to obtain faster sorting algorithms. Journal of the ACM (JACM). 1987 Jan 1;34(1):200-8.
[24] Berg MD, Kreveld MV, Overmars M, Schwarzkopf O. Computational geometry. In Computational geometry 1997 (pp. 1-17). Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg.
[25] Drezner Z. The planar two-center and two-median problems. Transportation Science. 1984 Nov;18(4):351-61.
[26] Drezner Z, Hamacher HW, editors. Facility location: applications and theory. Springer Science \& Business Media; 2004 May 3.
[27] Eppstein D. Faster construction of planar two-centers. In Proc. of the 8th Annual ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms (SODA), pages 131-138, 1997.
[28] Frederickson GN. Parametric search and locating supply centers in trees. In Workshop on Algorithms and Data Structures 1991 Aug 14 (pp. 299-319). Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg.
[29] Frederickson GN. Optimal algorithms for tree partitioning. In Proceedings of the Second Annual ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms 1991 Mar 1 (pp. 168-177).
[30] Gowda I, Kirkpatrick D, Lee D, Naamad A. Dynamic voronoi diagrams. IEEE Transactions on Information Theory. 1983 Sep;29(5):724-31.
[31] Gudmundsson J, Haverkort H, Park SM, Shin CS, Wolff A. Facility location and the geometric minimum-diameter spanning tree. Computational Geometry. 2004 Jan 1;27(1):87-106.
[32] Hakimi SL. Optimum distribution of switching centers in a communication network and some related graph theoretic problems. Operations research. 1965 Jun;13(3):462-75.
[33] Hershberger J. A faster algorithm for the two-center decision problem. Information processing letters. 1993 Aug 9;47(1):23-9.
[34] Hershberger J, Suri S. Efficient computation of Euclidean shortest paths in the plane. In Proceedings of 1993 IEEE 34th Annual Foundations of Computer Science 1993 Nov 3 (pp. 508-517). IEEE.
[35] Hershberger J, Suri S. Off-line maintenance of planar configurations. Journal of algorithms. 1996 Nov 1;21(3):453-75.
[36] Huang CH. Some problems on radius-weighted model of packet radio network, Doctoral dissertation, Ph. D. Dissertation, Dept. of Comput. Sci., Tsing Hua Univ., Hsinchu, Taiwan, 1992.
[37] Huang PH, Tsai YT, Tang CY. A near-quadratic algorithm for the alpha-connected two-center problem. Journal of information science and engineering. 2006 Nov 1;22(6):1317.
[38] Huang PH, Te Tsai Y, Tang CY. A fast algorithm for the alpha-connected two-center decision problem. Information Processing Letters. 2003 Feb 28;85(4):205-10.
[39] Hwang RZ, Lee RC, Chang RC. The slab dividing approach to solve the Euclidean P-Center problem. Algorithmica. 1993 Jan 1;9(1):1-22.
[40] Jeger M, Kariv O. Algorithms for finding $p$-centers on a weighted tree (for relatively small P). Networks. 1985 Sep;15(3):381-9.
[41] Kariv O, Hakimi SL. An algorithmic approach to network location problems. I: The p-centers. SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics. 1979 Dec;37(3):513-38.
[42] Karp B, Kung HT. GPSR: Greedy perimeter stateless routing for wireless networks. In Proceedings of the 6th annual international conference on Mobile computing and networking 2000 Aug 1 (pp. 243-254).
[43] Katz MJ, Sharir M. An expander-based approach to geometric optimization. SIAM Journal on Computing. 1997 Oct;26(5):1384-408.
[44] Khuller S, Sussmann YJ. The capacitated k-center problem. SIAM Journal on Discrete Mathematics. 2000;13(3):403-18.
[45] Kirkpatrick D. Optimal search in planar subdivisions. SIAM Journal on Computing. 1983 Feb;12(1):28-35.
[46] Kim YD, Yang YM, Kang WS, Kim DK. On the design of beacon based wireless sensor network for agricultural emergency monitoring systems. Computer standards and interfaces. 2014 Feb 1;36(2):288-99.
[47] Kouhestani B, Rappaport D, Salomaa K. Routing in a polygonal terrain with the shortest beacon watchtower. Computational Geometry. 2018 Mar 1;68:34-47.
[48] Kouhestani B, Rappaport D, Salomaa K. On the Inverse Beacon Attraction Region of a Point. 27th Canadian Conference on Computational Geometry, 2015.
[49] Kostitsyna I, Kouhestani B, Langerman S, Rappaport D. An optimal algorithm to compute the inverse beacon attraction region. arXiv preprint arXiv:1803.05946. 2018 Mar 15.
[50] Lim A, Rodrigues B, Wang F, Xu Z. k-Center problems with minimum coverage. Theoretical Computer Science. 2005 Feb 28;332(1-3):1-7.
[51] Megiddo N. Linear-time algorithms for linear programming in $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ and related problems. SIAM journal on computing. 1983 Nov;12(4):759-76.
[52] Megiddo N. Applying parallel computation algorithms in the design of serial algorithms. Journal of the ACM (JACM). 1983 Oct 1;30(4):852-65.
[53] Megiddo N, Supowit KJ. On the complexity of some common geometric location problems. SIAM journal on computing. 1984 Feb;13(1):182-96.
[54] Megiddo N. Partitioning with two lines in the plane. Journal of Algorithms. 1985 Sep 1;6(3):430-3.
[55] Mozafari A, Shermer TC. Transmitting particles in a polygonal domain by repulsion. In International Conference on Combinatorial Optimization and Applications 2018 Dec 15 (pp. 495-508). Springer, Cham.
[56] Overmars MH, Van Leeuwen J. Maintenance of configurations in the plane. Journal of computer and System Sciences. 1981 Oct 1;23(2):166-204.
[57] Pach J, editor. New trends in discrete and computational geometry. Springer Science \& Business Media; 2012 Dec 6.
[58] Patel M, Chandrasekaran R, Venkatesan S. Energy efficient sensor, relay and base station placements for coverage, connectivity and routing. In PCCC 2005. 24th IEEE International Performance, Computing, and Communications Conference, 2005. 2005 Apr 7 (pp. 581-586). IEEE.
[59] Sharir M. A near-linear algorithm for the planar 2-center problem. Discrete and Computational Geometry. 1997 Sep 1;18(2):125-34.
[60] Shermer T. A combinatorial bound for beacon-based routing in orthogonal polygons. Journal of Computational Geometry. 2022 Apr 20;13(1):13-51.
[61] Shmoys DB, Tardos É, Aardal K. Approximation algorithms for facility location problems. In Proceedings of the twenty-ninth annual ACM symposium on Theory of computing 1997 May 4 (pp. 265-274).
[62] Sojka E. A simple and efficient algorithm for sorting the intersection points between a Jordan curve and a line. In Fifth international conference in Central Europe in computer graphics and visualisation 97 (Plzeň, February 10-14, 1997) 1997 (pp. 524-533).
[63] Toth, Csaba D., Joseph O'Rourke, and Jacob E. Goodman. Handbook of discrete and computational geometry. Chapman and Hall/CRC, 2017.
[64] van Goethem A, Kostitsyna I, Verbeek K, Wulms J. Repulsion region in a simple polygon. In Abstr. 36th European Workshop on Computational Geometry (EuroCG) (Vol. 73, pp. 1-73).
[65] Wang H. On the Planar Two-Center problem and intersection hulls. arXiv preprint arXiv:2002.07945. 2020 Feb 19.
[66] Wang H, Zhang J. An $O(n \log n)$-time algorithm for the k-Center problem in trees. SIAM Journal on Computing. 2021;50(2):602-35.


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ A preliminary version of this chapter appeared in the proceedings of the International Conference on Combinatorial Optimization and Applications, COCOA 2018. [55]

[^1]:    ${ }^{1}$ A preliminary version of this chapter appeared in the proceedings of the 34 rd Canadian Conference on Computational Geometry, CCCG 2022. [10]

[^2]:    ${ }^{1}$ A preliminary version of this chapter appeared in the proceedings of the 33rd International Workshop on Combinatorial Algorithms, IWOCA 2022. [9]

